

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS

+ + + + +

UNITED STATES COPYRIGHT OFFICE

+ + + + +

HEARING ON EXEMPTION TO PROHIBITION ON
CIRCUMVENTION OF COPYRIGHT PROTECTION SYSTEMS
FOR ACCESS CONTROL TECHNOLOGIES

+ + + + +

DOCKET NO. RM 9907

+ + + + +

FRIDAY,
MAY 19, 2000

+ + + + +

The hearing in the above-entitled matter was held in Room 290, Stanford Law School, Crown Quadrangle, Stanford, California, at 9:45 a.m.

BEFORE:

MARYBETH PETERS, Register of Copyrights

DAVID CARSON, ESQ., General Counsel

RACHEL GOSLINS, ESQ., Attorney Advisor

CHARLOTTE DOUGLASS, ESQ., Principal Legal Advisor

ROBERT KASUNIC, ESQ., Senior Attorney Advisor

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

I-N-D-E-X

1		
2		
3	<u>Panel I:</u>	
4		
5	Paul Hughes	4
6	Business Software Alliance, Adobe Systems	
7		
8	Emery Simon	17
9	BSA	
10		
11	Fred Weingarten	30
12	American Library Association	
13		
14		
15	<u>Panel II:</u>	
16		
17	Steve Metalitz	116
18		
19		
20	<u>Panel III:</u>	
21		
22	Robin Gross	171
23	Electronic Frontier Foundation	
24		
25	Dean Marks	186
26	Motion Picture Association of America	
27		
28	Riley Russell	205
29	Sony Computer Entertainment America	
30		
31	Jonathan Hangartner	221
32	Bleem, Inc.	
33		
34	Morton Goldberg	231
35	Cowan, Liebowitz & Latman, P.C.	
36		

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 P-R-O-C-E-E-D-I-N-G-S

2 (9:45 a.m.)

3 MS. PETERS: Good morning. We're going
4 to start our second day of hearings here at Stanford
5 University Law School. Yesterday I made an opening
6 statement. I will not repeat it. It is outside for
7 those who are not aware of it.

8 This morning we have several witnesses
9 from the Business Software Alliance. We have Paul
10 Hughes of Adobe Systems, Incorporated, and then we
11 have Emery Simon representing DSA.

12 We were supposed to have Steve Metalitz
13 representing a wide range of copyright owners. He
14 is stuck in Chicago because of bad weather. He may
15 be getting on a plane and may be able to join us
16 this afternoon, but we're not sure about that. And
17 that may cause adjustment of the starting time this
18 afternoon. We'll know by the end of this morning
19 what we'll be doing. Also with us is Frederick
20 Weingarten, representing the American Library
21 Association.

22 So we will start with Business Software
23 Alliance, and between the two of you, you decide
24 who's going first. Paul? Okay.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. HUGHES: Good morning. My name is
2 Paul Hughes, and I'm Public Policy Advisor at Adobe
3 Systems. On behalf of Adobe, I would like to
4 express my appreciation for the opportunity to
5 appear before you today at this important rulemaking
6 hearing required by the Digital Millennium Copyright
7 Act.

8 Before turning to certain specific
9 issues raised by this rulemaking proceeding, I would
10 like to talk about the critical importance of
11 Section 1201 of the DMCA and Section 1201(a)(1)(A),
12 specifically, to software companies like Adobe which
13 confront a serious and pervasive piracy problem.
14 The anticircumvention rules enacted by the Congress
15 in the DMCA are the results of a deliberate and
16 considered response by the Congress to two facts:
17 dissemination of works in digital form poses very
18 real piracy threats to copyright holders; and the
19 use of technological measures to thwart such piracy
20 is needed to ensure the availability of legitimate
21 copyrighted works.

22 Let me tell you a little bit about
23 Adobe. Our chairmen, John Warnock and Chuck
24 Geschke, founded the company in 1982 with a very
25 modest business plan. They envisioned employing

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 around 40 people in what was effectively a copy
2 shop, doing typesetting based on their Adobe
3 PostScript printer language.

4 Unfortunately, they failed in that
5 business plan but instead launched Adobe PostScript
6 and PageMaker and went on to launch the desktop
7 publishing revolution. Today Adobe offers software
8 for web, print and multimedia publishing. It's
9 graphic design, imaging, dynamic media and other
10 software tools enable customers to create and
11 deliver visually-rich content across all media.

12 We are now the third largest personal
13 computer software company in the United States, with
14 annual revenues of a hair over a billion dollars.
15 And it's obviously no exaggeration to say we
16 wouldn't exist -- in our current form, at least --
17 were it not for the very strong intellectual
18 property laws in the United States that have
19 protected the creative work of all of us who work at
20 Adobe.

21 Software has the dubious distinction of
22 being both the copyrighted work distributed
23 exclusively in digital form to which technological
24 protection measures were applied and also being the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 first type of copyrighted work to be exposed to
2 massive digital piracy.

3 The markets for software are changing
4 rapidly. With the establishment of the Internet as
5 a major avenue for distributing software products,
6 we see both a major business opportunity and a major
7 potential threat.

8 First, I'd like to talk about the
9 opportunity presented by the Internet. It provides
10 tremendous prospects for all types of products and
11 services to be provided and distributed more
12 quickly, more efficiently and more cost-effectively
13 worldwide. Forrester Research estimates that annual
14 e-commerce sales just among businesses totaled \$100
15 billion last year and will reach \$1.33 trillion
16 worldwide by 2003.

17 Technology products and, obviously,
18 software in particular are leading the way in online
19 distribution and are obvious candidates for such
20 distribution. IDC, one of the major research firms
21 in the information technology sector, predicts that
22 the worldwide market for electronic commerce in
23 software reached \$3.5 billion last year and will
24 grow to \$32.9 billion by 2003, as more businesses
25 and consumers become familiar with shopping on the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Net. According to some estimates, as much as 70
2 percent of software will be sold online by 2005. So
3 that's the good news.

4 Now, the threat. Unfortunately, like
5 other criminals, Internet pirates are ingenious and
6 adaptive, constantly finding new ways to adapt for
7 illicit purposes the very technology that has made
8 e-commerce possible.

9 To give you a sobering example, if you
10 search on the Internet today, you will find over 2
11 million web pages offering links to or otherwise
12 talking about "warez," the Internet slang word for
13 illegal copies of software.

14 This rough indicator of the problem has
15 increased substantially over the past three years,
16 from 100,000 web page hits two years ago to 900,000
17 last year, and to over 2 million today. Virtually
18 every software product now available on the market
19 can be located on one of these sites, including all
20 Adobe products.

21 Indeed, the Business Software Alliance
22 estimates that, of business software in use today
23 worldwide, fully 37 percent of it is pirated. And
24 that figure doesn't include consumer software,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 games, things like that, for which the piracy rate
2 frankly, I believe, is probably far higher.

3 To protect ourselves against pirates,
4 the software industry has used a variety of
5 technological protection measures. Often, these
6 measures require a person loading a computer program
7 on their system to enter a passcode or serial number
8 as part of the installation process. If the wrong
9 code is entered the software cannot be installed or
10 accessed.

11 More recently, the industry has used a
12 variety of encryption technologies. For example, to
13 access certain antivirus products purchased online
14 and downloaded, the recipient needs a decryption key
15 which is sent by separate e-mail.

16 As the marketplace for computer programs
17 has developed, it has also become the practice of
18 most developers of business software products to
19 license their works to their customers. This has
20 proved to be a most efficient means of making these
21 works available to both vendors and consumers.

22 A business or other user will often
23 receive a single copy of the work, and the license
24 will authorize the use of that product by a
25 specified number of persons. This practice, often

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 referred to as "site licensing," is now an industry
2 standard. And to ensure that only authorized
3 persons use the software, loading a specific copy of
4 the work in a computer often requires the
5 application of a serial number, password or access
6 code to ensure that the person is legally entitled
7 to access and use the software.

8 Of course, hackers have adapted. Today
9 hacker sites offer serial numbers, access codes and
10 software program "patches" that bypass or circumvent
11 encryption or other technical protections that the
12 copyright owner may have employed. Using a popular
13 search engine again, and searching this time for the
14 word "crackz" -- always with that great "z" -- we
15 recently found over one million web pages which make
16 available such patches, many of which are
17 specifically designed to defeat technological
18 protection measures.

19 To give just one example, an
20 enterprising hacker has written a small utility
21 program called "The Adobe Serial Number Generator,"
22 that unfortunately does exactly what it's name
23 suggests. It will generate usable -- but illicit --
24 pirate serial numbers that enable access to our

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 products and updaters by those who do not have
2 legitimate licensed copies of our programs.

3 The making, distribution, and use of
4 this pirate serial number generator is analogous to
5 selling burglar tools or unauthorized satellite tv
6 descramblers. The latter two categories of devices
7 are illegal under state and federal laws and
8 Congress intended to do the same thing with
9 copyright circumvention devices -- make them
10 illegal.

11 From our industry's perspective,
12 1201(a)(1)(A) is an indispensable legal tool needed
13 to prevent piracy and distribution of these illegal
14 access codes and patches designed to defeat
15 technological protection measures.

16 We believe that it is self-evident that
17 the Congress recognized the critical nature of this
18 cause of action. That is why it is part of the law,
19 and why this Administration pushed hard for the
20 anticircumvision provisions of the WIPO Copyright
21 Treaty that the DMCA implements. The fact that
22 Congress saw fit to establish this rulemaking cannot
23 be treated as an opportunity to overrule the will of
24 the Congress. The consequences for Adobe, and for

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the software industry as a whole, would be
2 disastrous.

3 The vast majority of the comments
4 submitted suggest that the anticircumvention cause
5 of action as a whole should be suspended. We,
6 obviously, strongly disagree. In addition, such an
7 action is not within the scope of this rulemaking,
8 and I'll have more on that in just a moment.

9 A great many other submissions argue
10 that non-infringing uses of works, such as those
11 contemplated under the fair use provisions of the
12 Copyright Act, somehow trump the copyright holders
13 right to license and enjoy their property interest.

14 Again, that issue is not the subject of
15 this rulemaking, but much has been made of the
16 supposed danger, such as the development of pay-per-
17 use business models which may develop if this cause
18 of action goes into effect.

19 The argument that possible non-
20 infringing uses of works deserve a higher level of
21 consideration than the copyright owners' interests
22 has been the subject of much attention recently,
23 including recent litigation. We believe these
24 arguments to be ill-founded.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 For example, in the recent UMG
2 Recordings, Inc. v. MP3.Com, MP3.Com made this very
3 argument, and the judge had no trouble disposing of
4 the argument. He wrote:

5 "Finally, regarding Defendant's
6 purported reliance on other factors (analyzing the
7 four fair-use factors set out in Section 107), this
8 essentially reduces the claim that My.MP3.com
9 provides a useful service to consumers... Copyright,
10 however, is not designed to afford consumers'
11 protection, or convenience, but rather, to protect
12 the copyright holders' property interests.

13 Moreover, as a practical matter,
14 Plaintiffs have indicated no objection in principle
15 to licensing their recordings to companies like
16 MP3.com; they simply want to make sure they get the
17 remuneration the law reserves for them as holders of
18 copyrights in creative works.

19 Stripped to its essence, Defendant's
20 "consumer protection" argument amounts to nothing
21 more than a bald claim that Defendant should be able
22 to misappropriate Plaintiff's property simply
23 because there is a consumer demand for it. This
24 hardly appeals to the conscience of equity."

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 As Judge Rakoff makes clear, the goal of
2 the Copyright Act is, in part, to enable copyright
3 owners to license their works for a fee. There is
4 nothing wrong or inappropriate about this. The fact
5 that access control technologies facilitate such
6 forms of commercialization of works is not only
7 consistent with the intent of the Copyright Act
8 generally, but the specific intent of Congress in
9 enacting Section 1201(a)(1)(A).

10 Turning to specifics, the goals of this
11 proceeding are clearly spelled out in the statute
12 and relevant legislative history. Those who assert
13 that the effective date of the Section 1201(a)(1)(A)
14 prohibition should be further delayed shoulder an
15 extraordinarily high burden of persuasion. They
16 must demonstrate -- and I'm quoting here -- "through
17 highly specific, strong and persuasive" evidence --
18 and now I'm not quoting -- a likelihood that, over
19 the next three years, the net impact of outlawing
20 theft of passwords, unauthorized decryption or
21 descrambling, and similar acts of circumvention will
22 be to harm substantially the ability to make
23 licensed, permitted or other non-infringing uses of
24 specifically defined "classes" of copyrighted
25 materials.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The arguments present in the submissions
2 and the oral testimony make a number of arguments
3 why the cause of action should not go into effect.
4 We believe that each of these fails to make the case
5 required by law.

6 Many submissions argue that Section
7 1201(a)(1)(A) should not come into effect on October
8 28, 2000 for any class of work. We believe that
9 this would have the same effect as overturning the
10 law through rulemaking, which I submit would clearly
11 be wrong. Had Congress intended this as a
12 possibility, it would not have enacted the cause of
13 action at all.

14 The statute, by speaking about specific
15 classes of works, clearly directs the Librarian to
16 examine, on a case-by-case basis, the balance of
17 interests in each case. The case must be persuasive
18 and compelling, and addressed to specific classes of
19 works, and not to broad types of works such as, for
20 example, software.

21 A number of submissions are devoted to
22 arguments specific to the software industry. These
23 submissions argue that 1201(a)(1)(A) would impede
24 reverse engineering of software. The interrelation
25 between anticircumvention rules and acts of reverse

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 engineering -- and by which I mean legitimate acts
2 of studying and analyzing the computer program --
3 were considered in detail by the Congress in the
4 course of its very long deliberations on the Digital
5 Millennium Copyright Act.

6 Section 1201(f), as you know, was added
7 by the Senate during its consideration of the Act.
8 That section is a specific exception to
9 1201(a)(1)(A) and thus reflects the deliberate
10 judgment of the Congress in respect of exceptions
11 determined to be appropriate. The legislative
12 history of the Senate bill makes clear that the
13 specific intent of the Senate in adding Section
14 1201(f) was "to ensure that the effect of current
15 case law interpreting the Copyright Act is not
16 changed by enactment of this legislation for certain
17 acts of identification and analysis done in respect
18 of computer programs."

19 Section 1201(f) is obviously not the
20 subject of this rulemaking. Whether changes to
21 Section 1201(f) are appropriate -- and Adobe does
22 not think any are needed -- is a matter for the
23 Congress, and the Congress has not directed this
24 rulemaking to consider that issue.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 If you will permit, I'd like to make one
2 final point. The vast majority of the submissions
3 argue that truly bad things will happen if
4 technological measures can be used to control access
5 to software and other works. But these arguments
6 fail to recognize the fact that the use of such
7 measures is not a new development.

8 As I mentioned already, software
9 developers have long relied on technological
10 protection measures. Passwords and serial code
11 controls have been in use for over a decade.
12 Encryption technologies have been used for more than
13 five years. Over the years, companies have made
14 many changes in how they use these technologies, in
15 part as a response to consumers' needs, and in part
16 to thwart pirates.

17 The submissions filed do not argue that
18 the use of these technologies has inhibited the
19 availability of works or harmed the legitimate user.
20 Why do they not argue this? Because there is no
21 evidence to bear out such a claim.

22 The gist of the arguments made is that
23 creating this cause of action against hackers of
24 copy protection technologies would somehow change
25 everything. While the submissions raise a vast

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 array of hypothetical possibilities, I submit that
2 none present compelling evidence that the ongoing
3 practices have indeed created a problem.

4 There is substantial evidence, however,
5 that hackers are developing and posting patches and
6 other means aimed at defeating these technologies.
7 Section 1201(a)(1)(A) gives us a powerful message to
8 fight back, and this is what Congress intended.

9 Adobe and BSA respectfully submit that,
10 based on the submissions and testimony to date, the
11 record fails to demonstrate that any "particular
12 class of works" is likely to be subject, over the
13 next three years, to substantial adverse impact.
14 Therefore, we argue that Section 1201(a)(1)(A)
15 should take effect on October 28, 2000, as intended
16 by the Congress. Thank you, and I look
17 forward to taking your questions later.

18 MR. SIMON: Thank you. Rather than
19 reading another prepared statement, I thought I'd
20 kind of try to take on some of the issues that have
21 been raised in the various testimony to date, some
22 in Washington, some here yesterday. And there are
23 about five or six of these that I'd like to kind of
24 quickly run through, and then I'd like to say a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 couple more words about the reverse engineering
2 issue as well.

3 The goal of the copyright law is not to
4 promote use of works. It is in part to promote use
5 of works, but that's only one of its goals. The
6 goal of the copyright law is to promote creative
7 expression. And somehow to read into this
8 subsection of this rulemaking the notion that a
9 predominant goal should be to promote use is simply
10 wrong. That's not the intent of the act overall,
11 that was not the intent of the Congress in enacting
12 this.

13 What the Congress did is balance a
14 series of interests, and it balanced, really, two
15 sets of interests: the interests of those who
16 create works, who make creative expressions and fix
17 them; and those who enjoy the benefits of those
18 works, we, society as a whole.

19 And it balanced the harm posed
20 potentially by piracy to those who create, against
21 the harm posed potentially to users through the
22 application of technological measures to prevent
23 that harm, to prevent that piracy.

24 In drafting 1201(a)(1) the Congress
25 determined the harm of piracy was greater. That's

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 why the way this statute operates is the cause of
2 action comes into effect. That's the fault
3 presumption. It fails to come into effect only if
4 there is some superseding compelling consideration.

5 And the question there is: Is there
6 enough evidence now that wasn't there two years ago
7 to justify that superseding consideration? And I
8 think the answer is no. I think you have not heard
9 any testimony of any particular instances beyond
10 situations of mistake (like the Lexis situation of a
11 mistake in distributing a CD-ROM that had a time-
12 sensitive fuse on it) which actually suggests that
13 there's harm, that there's a problem out there.

14 Is the mere presence of a technological
15 protection measure enough to raise a red flag? I
16 think the answer to that is clearly no. What the
17 Congress said in this act in Section 1201 overall is
18 that technological protection measures are
19 appropriate, necessary means that it approves of to
20 be used in the context of preventing people from
21 stealing works.

22 The fact of the technological protection
23 measure is not particularly liked by some people
24 does not mean that it's a bad thing. But a lot of
25 the testimony you have heard suggests that the mere

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 fact that somebody has applied a technological
2 protection measure -- like The New York Times
3 applying an access control measure to its articles
4 creates a chilling effect and therefore creates a
5 potential problem -- the statute is not about
6 chilling effects.

7 The harm that has to be established here
8 to suspend this cause of action is harm, actual or
9 potential. And a chilling effect does not meet that
10 test. There's nothing either in the legislative
11 history, in the Congress debate of this, or in the
12 statute itself that suggests that. In fact, there's
13 a lot of discussion that's just the opposite.

14 Okay. Class of works versus category of
15 works. Category of works is a term of art. It's a
16 statutory concept which lists particular sets of
17 things that fall into categories. Had the Congress
18 intended for class to be read as broadly as that,
19 it would have said category. Had the Congress
20 intended for class to be read more broadly than
21 category, it would have said that.

22 But in fact it said -- the legislative
23 history suggests just the opposite. The examples
24 that it gives is that class is somewhere between a
25 category and an individual work. This piece of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 paper that I wrote this morning, somewhere between
2 this and I guess all literary works is where class
3 falls. And it probably falls a lot closer to the --
4 you have to specifically figure out what that
5 universe of works is, where the actual harm is.

6 Harm is not -- and the reason I believe
7 that the Congress did this is because it did not
8 want a consequence where if, for example, one could
9 establish that chemistry textbooks, because they're
10 subject to access controls, become much less
11 available for educational purposes and that it
12 causes harm in the sense of one of the five factors
13 that have to be weighed here by the Librarian. But
14 the fact that chemistry textbooks create that
15 problem and that therefore all literary works --
16 which is the category that the chemistry textbooks
17 fall into -- should now no longer be subject to this
18 rule of law, that's clearly not what the Congress
19 meant, couldn't have been what the Congress meant.

20 Because with that, what you end up doing
21 is sweeping an enormous universe of works out the
22 door because there may potentially be a problem in
23 one subsegment of that universe. So that's category
24 versus class.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Class is clearly much smaller than
2 category, it's probably not as small as an
3 individual identifiable work. But it's somewhere
4 between that and probably closer to that end of the
5 spectrum than it is to the end where categories sit.

6 Factors to be weighed in your
7 determination. The statute actually lists that the
8 Librarian has to examine five variables. And an
9 enormous amount of attention has been paid to the
10 fourth variable. That fourth variable says "the
11 impact of prohibiting the circumvention of
12 technological measure applied to copyrighted works
13 has on criticism, comment and use, reporting,
14 teaching, scholarship and research."

15 I also point out that in that list of
16 five, it's a conjunctive, it's an "and." And you
17 have to weigh the impact in each of those areas in
18 order to make your determination, or for the
19 Librarian to make his determination.

20 And I simply point to two of the other
21 factors. The first factor talks about the
22 availability for use of copyrighted works. And you
23 have received a substantial amount of testimony from
24 Paul, just a moment ago, and from others that the
25 availability of technological measures to protect

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 our works is one of the reasons why we make works
2 available in more convenient forms to users.

3 We talked yesterday about an example of
4 what would happen if that CD-ROM containing those
5 French cases had just not been available in digital
6 form. That somebody would have gone to dozens of
7 law journals in physical form and tracked them down,
8 creating an enormous disincentive to research. The
9 fact that those kinds of materials are available in
10 digital form creates an enormous incentive to
11 research, as well as other commercial markets.

12 So the availability of works has
13 substantially increased, I would pose to you,
14 because of the availability and the increased use of
15 technological measures. That factor weighs no less
16 and no more in the list of five than any other, and
17 it can't be dismissed. It has to be weighed.

18 The second factor I'll point you to is
19 the fourth one in the statute, the one that talks
20 about the effect of circumvention measures on the
21 market for, or value of copyrighted works. In
22 making a determination that there may be harm -- for
23 example, with respect to chemistry textbooks because
24 in the classroom environment those textbooks become
25 less available and it creates an impediment to

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 teaching -- before you say that that is a
2 dispositive and final decision, you have to look at
3 the other factors. And one of the factors that you
4 have to look at is what does that decision portend
5 for the market for chemistry textbooks, the
6 commercial market for chemistry textbooks. That's
7 what the fourth factor talks about.

8 And again, it's a conjunctive between
9 those factors. None of these is dispositive, and in
10 making the determination you have to weigh all of
11 them and balance them. This is ultimately a
12 balancing exercise.

13 There's been a fair amount of discussion
14 of the evils of a metered world, of a pay-per-use
15 world. I find this baffling. A huge amount of
16 commercial activity in our economy, global economy,
17 is based on metered use. I rented a car at the
18 airport yesterday. I pay so many dollars for so
19 much time. If I want to keep it longer, I pay more.
20 There's nothing wrong with that concept.

21 Telephone service. I pick up the phone
22 to make a call, and I pay for the amount of time
23 that I use it. Airport fees, airport user fees. We
24 pay user fees. We pay a whole bunch of fees based
25 upon use, upon the notion of the benefit that I

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 derive from that activity determines the price that
2 I pay for it. That's at the core of a whole
3 universe of economic activity.

4 The notion that that is now going to be
5 applied to copyrighted works being wrong is, to me,
6 baffling. Because if it's wrong to be applied to an
7 intangible property interest like a copyright, why
8 isn't it also wrong for it to be applied to any
9 other property interest?

10 Like the fact that Hertz owns the car
11 that I happen to be driving around. And gee, I
12 really like this car. It's got this wonderful
13 navigation device in it, so I never get lost. I'd
14 love to take it home with me.

15 So I have initial lawful access -- and
16 I'll get to that again in a second -- I have initial
17 lawful access to this Hertz car, and it's got this
18 wonderful navigation device in it. And actually,
19 the thing that makes the navigation device is a
20 combination of some hardware and some software.
21 The software's copyrightable. Does that mean if I
22 could figure out some way to just take that software
23 out of there, and would only use it for fair use
24 purposes -- I'd guarantee it, I swear -- does that
25 mean that I could somehow take this because I have

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 initial lawful access to this car? I don't know.
2 It just baffles me.

3 The notion that property can be parsed
4 based upon the benefit that the user gets out of it,
5 and the fee charged can be assigned in a way that
6 corresponds to that benefit, that's a good thing for
7 consumers.

8 If every time I flew to San Francisco I
9 had to buy a new car, that would make no sense at
10 all. And one of the increasing trends in the
11 software industry is to make applications available
12 off web pages, off the Internet, which enables
13 people to use, for example, a tax-paying program so
14 they can do their quarterly taxes by renting, in
15 effect, the use of that software off the Internet
16 instead of having to buy the product. Much cheaper.
17 Plus, you're getting it constantly updated so you're
18 getting the latest tax laws.

19 Isn't that a good thing that instead of
20 my having to pay \$100 for this software program, I
21 can pay \$4 once a quarter? So the business models
22 are evolving in a way that creates fees based upon
23 the benefit that is being derived. Technological
24 protection measures are integral to making that
25 possible. That's a good thing.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Initial lawful use I think kind of has
2 been done to death. But let's kick this one one
3 more time. Initial lawful use was a concept that
4 was much discussed within the legislative process
5 that led to the enactment of the DMCA. It was a
6 concept that was posited by many of the same parties
7 who are putting it forward to you in this rulemaking
8 proceeding.

9 The term does not appear in the statute
10 because the Congress rejected the concept. For you
11 to somehow read that concept into the statute where
12 the Congress specifically rejected it would do
13 violence to the role that's been assigned to the
14 Librarian. It would be substantially outside the
15 scope of his role and his authority.

16 It is not for the Librarian to make
17 laws; it's for the Librarian to make rules
18 implementing laws. It's not for those rules to
19 overturn what the role of the Congress is.

20 I also find the concept of initial
21 lawful use kind of baffling in the library context.
22 Let's do a library context. I went to Georgetown
23 Law School, and Georgetown Law School permits its
24 alumni and its students to use the library but does
25 not permit the general public to use the library.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So does that mean that if, for some
2 reason I, as an alumni, do have initial lawful
3 access to that library on a wonderful Friday
4 afternoon in May, does that mean that I can go into
5 that library at four in the morning on Christmas Eve
6 as well? The fact that I got in once legally, does
7 that mean that I can get in again and again?
8 Obviously, it doesn't. It can't mean that.

9 Does the fact that I took a book off the
10 shelf and read it and used it for research mean that
11 I can now take that book with me? Obviously, it
12 doesn't. The notion of initial lawful access as the
13 test simply supposes that there's only such a thing
14 as one permission. I only have an on/off switch. I
15 can give you permission or not give you permission.

16 That simply is contrary to all the
17 business models that are evolving in a digital age,
18 particularly for a software industry but I think for
19 other industries as well. And if that is the rule
20 that you would adopt -- which I would argue to you
21 is simply not permitted because it's outside the
22 scope of rulemaking because it was specifically
23 rejected by the Congress -- but if that were to be
24 the rule that you would adopt, you would defeat the
25 entire purpose of this provision.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 There's a problem that's common to all
2 the concepts that have been raised, of the
3 categories that have been suggested to you, whether
4 they're some variation on the initial lawful access
5 notion or thin copyrighted works or some other
6 concept. And the problem with them is that no
7 matter how you try to parse them, they ultimately
8 end up swallowing the whole rule.

9 There's really no way to say this is an
10 initial lawful access, fair-use type, thin kind of
11 work; and that isn't. They're all either one or the
12 other. Fair use can be exercised with respect to
13 anything.

14 Okay, last point. You really have only
15 one determination to make, and that determination is
16 adverse effect. It's really a harm test. You have
17 to find harm. If you do not find harm, the inquiry
18 stops. And the burden of finding harm is pretty
19 high. The burden is for people to present to you
20 specific instances where it has occurred. No harm,
21 no action.

22 Resist the temptation to act. I
23 understand, having been a bureaucrat, that
24 bureaucrats don't like to do nothing. Bureaucrats
25 like to do stuff. And I understand that you've been

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 charged with rulemaking, and you have this enormous
2 temptation to do something. They're all fidgeting
3 and smiling at me. Don't do anything. It's cool.
4 You know, sometimes you avoid making mistakes when
5 you do nothing.

6 Okay. One last word and that's about
7 reverse engineering, which is an issue that is
8 entirely outside the scope of this rulemaking. Let
9 me say that again. It's entirely outside the scope
10 of this rulemaking. It is a matter specifically,
11 thoroughly, comprehensively addressed in Section
12 1201(f), which creates a specific exception to
13 1201(a)(1)(A). The Congress thought about it long
14 and hard, fought about it, deliberated, and enacted
15 it. That's it.

16 It may be a lousy rule, but it's not for
17 you to say that. It's for the Congress to come back
18 and think again and say, "Hey, we messed up. We've
19 got to do it again." Or not. That is not the issue
20 posed to you in this rulemaking. Thank
21 you.

22 MS. PETERS: Thank you. Fred.

23 MR. WEINGARTEN: Thank you. Actually, I
24 haven't been a bureaucrat in 20 years myself. My
25 experience is that the typical bureaucrat doesn't

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 want to do anything. And so I'm here to urge you to
2 do something.

3 My name is Fred Weingarten, also known
4 as Rick or Frederick Weingarten. I direct the
5 Office for Information Technology Policy for the
6 American Library Association, OITP. We're a small
7 research and analysis office for the Library
8 Association.

9 And for the last year I've had the
10 privilege of working for the five library
11 associations in Washington -- the Association of
12 Research Libraries, American Association of Law
13 Libraries, Medical Library Association and the
14 Special Library Association -- in addition to ALA in
15 trying to do some background digging on this issue
16 and support their efforts in this rulemaking. And
17 so I'm pleased today to speak for all of those.

18 I come before you, not as a lawyer, nor
19 even in fact as a librarian, as some of you may
20 know. I'm a policy analyst. I've worked off and on
21 on information policy, including intellectual
22 property issues for many years. I was originally
23 trained as a computer scientist, but my old
24 colleagues have warned me long ago never to apply
25 that word to myself these days.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 But I was a computing research manager
2 for the National Science Foundation for many years.
3 In fact, I made some of the early grants that led to
4 the NSF.net and Internet, and, thus, may be the
5 cause of some of this heartburn and churning that
6 we're all going through these days.

7 I've also worked at the Congressional
8 Office of Technology Assessment where, in fact, in
9 the '80s we did more than one study of the impact of
10 technology on intellectual property law. And, in
11 fact, the first study we did was for Senator
12 Matthias and Bob Kastenmeyer's committees. And I'm
13 sorry Steve Metalitz didn't make it because when he
14 was working for Senator Matthias, we worked with him
15 very closely on these issues.

16 In our first report, one of the
17 questions that the Congress had asked was whether
18 they couldn't resolve some of these technology
19 issues once and for all. Couldn't they pass a
20 copyright law that anticipated technological change
21 and struck the right balances so they didn't have to
22 constantly revisit? And one of our answers was not
23 very well welcomed because it was no. And I think
24 this rulemaking here right now is evidence that we
25 were right.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 You've really got an incredibly
2 difficult task, I think. Partly because the law is
3 really a very confusing law, many of the terms are
4 vague, ambiguous. And in our view, in fact, the
5 law's Section 1201 contains a basic paradox. And
6 you're being asked to resolve that paradox in this
7 rulemaking without a heck of a lot of guidance.

8 Although the description of the process
9 of the bill made it sound very rational and
10 deliberative and carefully thought out, that's not
11 my recollection of how that bill came to pass. It
12 was extremely contentious, right up to the end.
13 Lots of different views, two different committees of
14 jurisdiction in the House, all fighting over what it
15 meant and what it should cover.

16 And so, in some sense, recourse to
17 legislative history for guidance is not too useful,
18 either. But other people closer to that have
19 already testified for us on that. But we would say
20 that we think that itself is a debatable proposition
21 for this panel to think about.

22 And, finally, you're really dealing with
23 fundamental issues. I mean, copyright law is rooted
24 in the Constitution. Rental cars aren't. So the
25 basic conflict between the public interest and all

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 of those terms in the law that we sort of encompass
2 with the term fair use -- with small F, small U --
3 are deeply embedded public policy values, and one
4 can't dismiss them lightly.

5 So we've raised in our responses and in
6 our testimony, I realize, some broad issues, broad
7 concerns, maybe uncomfortably broad. But we think
8 it's very important for this panel to consider the
9 fundamental public policy environment in which the
10 rulemaking is taking place. And we understand that,
11 at the end of the process, you have to go into a
12 room and really decide specific words and get into
13 details. And that is a tough problem for you. But
14 there is a context that I think we really need to
15 raise.

16 I mentioned that the law has a basic
17 paradox. And the basic question before this panel
18 is whether technological measures intended to
19 control access to digital works also prevent users
20 from exercising their rights under copyright law to
21 use the material in non-authorized but non-
22 infringing ways. And it seems patently obvious to
23 us that they do.

24 In the first place, circumvention is
25 defined by the law as bypassing a technological

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 measure without authorization. Fair use and other
2 limitations in the law are, by definition,
3 unauthorized uses. Therefore, unless the
4 technological measure itself is programmed to step
5 aside -- or in some sense, maybe pre-authorize
6 unauthorized use -- it must block a non-infringing
7 lawful use. And that's a basic paradox in the law.

8 Let me say that, as an aside, that it's
9 not clear to me from my long ago technical training,
10 that the technology needs to be that rigid. That we
11 can't have fair-use soft or fair-use friendly
12 technological measures that achieve the objectives
13 of preventing piracy and yet are flexible enough to
14 allow public interest to be fully exercised.

15 But that's an area in which we, in fact,
16 in my office are trying to open a dialogue with
17 people in the industry with some of the newer
18 entrepreneurial e-book and e-library firms. We've
19 started talking with them and, in fact, would like
20 to work out some sort of convergence of library
21 service models and business models that doesn't end
22 up in a food fight in Washington, which doesn't help
23 anybody. Although it pays my salary.

24 It seems to me that there are four
25 questions that you have before you. One, does a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 technological measure that controls use also control
2 access? The answer is yes. And I'll discuss that a
3 little later, but I think the record for the hearing
4 has clearly established that.

5 Second question. Are there now or are
6 there likely to be in the next three years
7 technological measures that persistently control
8 access or use after a user has lawfully acquired a
9 work? Again, we think the record unambiguously
10 establishes that the answer is yes. Such measures
11 already exist, and these persistent controls are
12 really central to business models envisioned by the
13 content community.

14 What works will be or are protected by
15 such measures? Well, I think one could reverse the
16 question and say what won't be. Let me just read --
17 Steve isn't here, but let me just read the range of
18 industries he will be representing when he
19 testifies: Film Marketing Association; Society of
20 Composers, Authors and Publishers; Media
21 Photographers; Publishers; Association of American
22 University Presses; Authors Guild; Broadcast Music;
23 Business Software Alliance; Directors Guild;
24 Interactive Digital Software; McGraw-Hill Companies;
25 Motion Picture Association; Music Publishers'

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Association; Professional Photographers; Recording
2 Industry.

3 These people are all interested in this
4 hearing. Why are they interested in it? Because
5 they all want to use technological measures to
6 protect and market their works. So how can we,
7 then, say "Well, it's just this work that is of
8 concern to us."

9 The other reason that we look for a
10 broad exemption, of course, is that libraries don't
11 like to play favorites. We serve an incredibly
12 diverse community. Different libraries serve
13 different communities, and it is hard to imagine a
14 kind of work that is not in our concern that we be
15 able to provide our patrons with access to it.

16 So what's the harm? Well, we believe
17 that the record has established the existence of
18 harm in four ways. First, we argue that since fair
19 use is basic public policy rooted in copyright law,
20 a balance required by the Constitution, any
21 diminution of it through strict interpretation of
22 Section 1201 is de facto serious harm.

23 You're removing from the public a basic
24 right they have or a privilege -- however you might

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 use the term -- under copyright law. And we should
2 not have to go any further.

3 Those rights and privileges have been
4 established for 300 years. First in British common
5 law, and then in U.S. law. It's been upheld by the
6 Supreme Court for many years. It's basic public
7 policy. Why should we have to show and re-establish
8 and re-argue something that has been in the law for
9 300 years?

10 Secondly, current experience with
11 licensed products in which license terms are
12 protected by technological measures shows that harm
13 is already being experienced in areas such as
14 archival rights and first sale. Libraries, the
15 Copyright Office and the Librarian have every
16 legitimate reason to presume that these limitations
17 are just the leading edge of a rapid technological
18 trend, and that such harm will undoubtedly increase
19 over the next three years. And I'll get back to
20 this issue of why I use term "licensing." I'll get
21 back to that in a minute.

22 Third, although the operative section of
23 the law has not yet come into force, it is
24 reasonable to presume that when it does, the threat
25 of criminal penalties on users, coupled with the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 vague and broad nature of the anticircumvention
2 provisions, is going to result in a severely
3 chilling effect. It may have seemed, based
4 on some of the testimony or some of the responses,
5 that librarians just can't wait to get out there and
6 hack. And just can't wait to provide havens for
7 piracy for their users. In fact, what I've observed
8 in my years working for the Library Association is
9 that librarians tend to be a fairly conservative
10 lot.

11 They really have other things to do than
12 to try to figure out from day to day what the
13 copyright law is letting them do or not. And in
14 such an ambiguous environment, if there's threat of
15 criminal penalties particularly or lawsuit, their
16 answer will be no, even if the result is harm to the
17 user or denying the user access that they might have
18 legal rights to.

19 Fourth, it's clear that these controls
20 are not only for the purpose of preventing piracy,
21 but they are to implement and enforce a new pay-per-
22 use model on all information users. Now, let me say
23 that we're not asking you to overturn a pay-per-use
24 business model. That's not the job of the Copyright
25 Office, not the job of copyright law.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 But it is the job of copyright law to
2 retain a balanced social policy in that environment.
3 And, in fact, if we are moving towards that model of
4 information sale, the role that libraries and
5 schools play in providing safety-valve access to the
6 information works is even more important. And it's
7 even more important to protect that role.

8 Let me quote from just one publicity
9 announcement from a vendor. And I'm not going to
10 name the vendor in this. I really don't want to pick
11 out and embarrass a particular firm. It really
12 reflects, I think, the view of the industry.

13 "This firm has developed a way for
14 publishers --" and I'm quoting -- "to receive
15 revenue each time a student accesses even a single
16 page of a title. This has never been possible
17 before. Thus, older titles and out of print books
18 that have been read and studied thousands of times
19 over the years in libraries (yet have not generated
20 new income) will now produce new revenues and become
21 more valuable assets to publishers."

22 Now, if that isn't a basic threat to the
23 fundamental role that libraries have served and
24 schools have served over the last couple hundred
25 years, I don't know what is. We're not speculating

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 here; we're not imagining problems. We're saying
2 that this move to a pay-per-use model threatens the
3 very basic foundations of what libraries and schools
4 are all about. And it is important, if that is
5 happening, for us to provide or protect the safety-
6 valves inherent in fair use.

7 Let me finish by addressing four
8 particular topics that I think have caused some
9 confusion in the past. And although my addressing
10 them will probably increase rather than decrease the
11 confusion, I've been wanting to do this after
12 watching all five days of hearings.

13 The first is the problem of access and
14 use. I think for the purposes of Section 1201,
15 there's simply no useful distinction between the
16 term "access" and "use." Section 1201 does not
17 prevent circumvention for use. Every time one uses
18 a digital work one accesses it. All technological
19 controls control access.

20 So if one wants to extract from a work,
21 one wants to print a work, one wants to play a movie
22 on a DVD or play a song off of a CD, or view a
23 picture, what you're really doing is accessing even
24 though, from your terms, it's a use. So access is
25 inseparable from use.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And in my testimony I quote Judge Kaplan
2 on the Reimerdes case. That may be the only thing
3 that Judge Kaplan said that we might agree on, but
4 we think that he clearly views access as playing the
5 DVD on a computer.

6 Secondly, the problem of persistent
7 controls. We've called these measures that continue
8 to control access after the work is initially
9 acquired persistent controls. That can be as simple
10 as a database system that requires repeated use of a
11 password each time one logs on to use it. Or they
12 can be far more complex as technology evolves.

13 These persistent controls are not just
14 for the purpose of protecting against piracy, but to
15 develop and enforce new business models, many which
16 seek to charge for uses that in the past been free
17 once a work has been lawfully obtained.

18 Once again, we're not against the
19 development of those new business models. But we
20 don't think copyright law needs to be invoked to
21 protect particular business strategies. Let me
22 quote from a report by an industry marketing firm
23 that serves the publishing industry:

24 "For the past several years, digital
25 rights management (DRM) has focused primarily on

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 protecting digital content from illegal or unwanted
2 uses." And you've heard a lot about that in the
3 five days of testimony.

4 "Lately, though, the scope and emphasis
5 has been evolving to include more than just
6 copyright protection ... the pressures and
7 opportunities in digital markets are forcing both
8 publishers and their vendors to take a broader view
9 of what a digital rights management platform
10 entails."

11 And yet Section 1201, under the guise of
12 copyright law, is expected to protect all of those
13 possible models, all of those possible ways of
14 distributing information.

15 I'd like to talk a bit about
16 circumvention. Many times I've heard the panel ask
17 presenters whether they have had any experience with
18 circumvention. And I've really wished that any one
19 of them has fired back a question, what is a
20 circumvention? What do you mean?

21 Since the definition of technological
22 measure is so broad and all-encompassing that it can
23 even include passwords and library cards -- as we
24 established in our comments -- what does
25 circumvention mean? Does using a password to access

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 a database, to use it in a way that is not
2 authorized in terms of the license a circumvention?
3 I don't know. But I haven't heard anybody tell me
4 it isn't.

5 That makes it very difficult for a
6 librarian to say whether or not she has circumvented
7 or not. Will misuse of a library card now become a
8 federal crime because it is a circumvention to
9 access a database in a library?

10 Linda Crowe's library offers access to
11 an online database system that requires a password
12 and a library card as an identification and entry
13 measure. Suppose somebody in that district loans
14 their library card and password to a visiting
15 relative, who then goes to the library and uses it
16 to download some information for a school project.
17 Has that person now become a federal felon for
18 circumventing 1201? I'm not sure that they haven't.

19 Now, we might say, "Well, they would
20 never prosecute such a person," and so on. But that
21 raises a problem that Bob Kastenmeyer used to worry
22 about all the time, whether we're creating in our
23 copyright law the essence of a prohibition that
24 essentially makes scofflaws and criminals of us all

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 by winking at minor offenses, and we'll decide what
2 a major offense is.

3 Finally, I'd like to talk a bit about
4 the relationship between licensing and controls
5 because that's come up several times. So let me
6 suggest some considerations, because they do wrap
7 together and are very difficult to pull apart.

8 But basically there's no direct
9 relationship between the technological issue and
10 licensing. Section 1201 is part of copyright law.
11 Licensing is a contract, a private contract. So we
12 have no objection to knowledgeable parties,
13 consenting adults, agreeing to anything they want to
14 agree to. Librarians do this all the time. What we
15 object is criminal measures under copyright law
16 being tangled up in that.

17 People can license away anything they
18 want. That has nothing to do with whether Section
19 1201 and fair use in Section 1201 should be
20 protected and interpreted.

21 And I'd also like to point to Jim Neal's
22 testimony -- and Lolly mentioned this yesterday also
23 and I think Karen Coyle did -- that copyright law
24 does set some boundary in negotiating licenses, sets
25 some basic principles.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Second, technological measures can
2 really restrict negotiation. Because as they become
3 more and more embedded in the work itself, it
4 becomes non-negotiable. You can negotiate until
5 you're blue in the face, but if the technological
6 measure is part of the work itself, there's nothing
7 to negotiate.

8 Unbalanced enforcement. If the database
9 provider that Linda Crowe works with decides that
10 that misuse of the password and library card
11 violates the terms of the license, they can jolly
12 well go to court and sue for breach of contract.
13 And if Linda thinks they're being too rigid, she can
14 go to court and sue.

15 Disputes in contract law can be resolved
16 in court and are all the time. What Section 1201
17 does, if not equipped with an exemption, is bring
18 the weight of criminal law against one party in that
19 dispute, in addition to breach of contract. That's
20 an unfair balancing. That's an interference of
21 copyright law with licensing, not a support.

22 And, finally, given the trend towards
23 UCITA and non-negotiated license, the idea that
24 there's some negotiation that goes on between
25 consumers of information products -- even libraries

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 and their providers -- I think is growing dim. But
2 that's another fight.

3 In conclusion, much of our testimony has
4 sounded alarming and negative, I think, over the
5 last five days. Deliberately so. We're engaged in
6 an advocacy proceeding here. But, in fact, most
7 libraries have embraced technological change.

8 We believe that to the information
9 society in this new century, libraries will be even
10 more important, serving the public, supporting
11 health research, care providers, the legal
12 community, underpinning vital research in
13 educational missions of our schools, colleges and
14 universities.

15 We also believe that content providers
16 should be exploring new ways to serve their public
17 and expanding markets for their work. That's
18 perfectly fine. That's good. We use their
19 products. And copyright is an important tool for
20 them to do so. We're not against copyright. We're
21 not trying to undo the DMCA.

22 Of course, libraries are also exploring
23 new forms of service models using these new
24 technologies. There's no reason why both interests
25 can't be served, why this can't be a win-win

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 technological change for society and for the
2 creators and for the publishers. One goal need not
3 be achieved at the expense of the other.

4 Public services provided by libraries
5 and educational institutions does not threaten, but
6 if anything, enhances business opportunities.
7 Copyright law extends rights to creators, but in the
8 name of the public interest it also assigns
9 responsibilities to them in the form of limitations
10 and exceptions.

11 They're not new ideas; they date back to
12 the earliest days of copyright law. Nor are they
13 trivial. They've served our society well for 200
14 years. We see neither technological reasons nor
15 economic reasons to sweep them under the table now
16 in the guise of controlling access to protect
17 against piracy.

18 A broad use-based exemption would be a
19 strong statement that the public interest continues
20 to be served in the digital age. Thank you.

21 MS. PETERS: Thank you. We'll have our
22 question and answer session begin with Charlotte
23 Douglass.

24 MS. DOUGLASS: Thank you. I found all
25 the testimony quite informative. I'd like to get

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 into just a little bit the question of reverse
2 engineering. I know you said it two times at least.
3 So it's reverse engineering, reverse engineering,
4 reverse engineering. It's supposed to take, like, I
5 divorce you, I divorce you, I divorce you.

6 But I'm going to raise it one more time.
7 And that has to do with -- suppose there is an
8 adverse effect? It seems to me that Section
9 1201(a)(1) is supposed to address adverse effects.
10 So that if the Librarian did find an adverse effect
11 as to which non-infringing could not be made, is the
12 Librarian prohibited from dealing with reverse
13 engineering at all or finding that there is an
14 adverse effect that could be remedied by reverse
15 engineering or a computer program, for example?

16 MR. SIMON: Is reverse engineering a
17 class of works?

18 MS. DOUGLASS: No.

19 MR. SIMON: Thank you. Your rulemaking
20 is limited to classes of works. You can have
21 reverse engineering of a whole universe of stuff,
22 not just computer programs. So this notion somehow
23 that reverse engineering requires some specific
24 treatment within this rulemaking is really -- again,
25 it confuses me.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Because this rulemaking speaks to
2 specific classes of works where harm is established.
3 It does not speak about, necessarily, what the cause
4 of the harm is. The Congress addressed a potential
5 cause of harm in Section 1201(f).

6 MS. DOUGLASS: That referred to computer
7 programs, and I think I heard someone say that
8 computer programs was a category of works, but it
9 was not a class of works.

10 MR. SIMON: It is. Read 102, Charlotte.
11 It's not a category of works. It's a literary work.

12 MS. DOUGLASS: Absolutely, absolutely.

13 MR. SIMON: So it's not a category of
14 works.

15 MS. DOUGLASS: So, okay. So that could
16 be in a class of works?

17 MR. SIMON: It could, if you were to
18 interpret the statute as saying all computer
19 programs belong to a single class. The reality is
20 that there are hundreds of kinds of computer
21 programs. There are games, there are application
22 products, there are operating systems, there are
23 business products, there are consumer-aimed
24 products.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So the question would arise, even if you
2 were to hypothetically entertain the question which
3 you asked me -- which I think is a fundamentally
4 wrong question -- the question is, is the harm with
5 respect to what kind of software? Is it with
6 respect to computer-aided design software?

7 And are you then going to create an
8 exception for the entire class of any computer
9 program as defined in the statute? Which these
10 days, frankly, includes music and movies. Because
11 if you look at the definition of what a computer
12 program is under the act, it's anything that has a
13 series of instructions that performs particular
14 function.

15 So now you've gone back to, well, what
16 are you excluding? You're excluding not just
17 categories -- not a category, but categories. So it
18 doesn't make any sense to me.

19 MS. DOUGLASS: Okay. Thank you.

20 MR. SIMON: You're welcome.

21 MS. DOUGLASS: Do you have any further
22 comment on that at all?

23 MR. HUGHES: Other than to say that I
24 agree with Emery, section 1201(f), I guess, was
25 beamed in maybe midway through the long DMCA process

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 on Capitol Hill and was beamed in specifically
2 because there were people who were concerned about
3 the potential negative effect of Section 1201 on
4 reverse engineering for the purposes of
5 interoperability.

6 And they wanted a specific section --
7 the advocates of this concern wanted a specific
8 section of 1201 dealing with that. And they got it.
9 And indeed, you know, by analogy we have, as you
10 know, another section dealing with encryption
11 research and another section dealing with security
12 testing, firewalls, that sort of thing. So
13 certainly it would be my read that those would fall
14 outside the scope of 1201(a).

15 MR. SIMON: The rulemaking.

16 MR. HUGHES: The rulemaking. And
17 indeed, therefore this rulemaking.

18 MS. DOUGLASS: Okay. We had a comment
19 about Fontographer. And one commenter said that in
20 some situations there was a Fontographer program
21 where he was licensed to program, but there was a
22 glitch in the software. And for some reason that
23 the copyright owner didn't have in mind, he could
24 not access that program.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Now, would he be prevented from fixing
2 that glitch by 1201(a)(1)(A) if it came into force
3 without an exemption, with respect to that?

4 MR. HUGHES: I'm afraid I'm not familiar
5 with the specific case. It's hard to answer.
6 Fontographer is probably a product developed by a
7 company called Altsys, that was then bought by
8 Macromedia. And I guess they haven't done any new
9 revision of this program in quite a long time.

10 But I'm not, frankly -- you know,
11 obviously there's a licensing issue, whether the
12 license would prohibit reverse engineering. But
13 actually, as far as I know, this program is an old
14 enough program that I'm not sure, in fact, it's
15 protected. This is pure speculation at this point
16 because I've never used the program.

17 But I'm not actually sure it's protected
18 by a technological protection. And that would then
19 be the issue. If it were, then I would say it would
20 be covered by the 1201(a)(1)(A) prohibition. Emery?

21 MR. SIMON: I don't know what the
22 problem is, Charlotte. There's a glitch in the
23 program?

24 MS. DOUGLASS: Yes.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. SIMON: This person's trying to
2 engage in what, error correction?

3 MS. DOUGLASS: Yes.

4 MR. SIMON: And he can't do so because
5 what?

6 MS. DOUGLASS: Because the error
7 correction required that he override some kind of
8 technological control. And he's afraid to do that
9 because of 1201(a)(1). He would be afraid of doing
10 that.

11 MR. SIMON: Well, would be is -- I mean,
12 I can't answer that question. I don't know the
13 product, I have no idea what the technological
14 control is.

15 MR. HUGHES: Actually, maybe I could
16 just leap in with an analogy that I think is
17 somewhat on point. Firstly, this product is from a
18 company -- you know, it's still in business as far
19 as I know. It's still a supported product.
20 So I would say that his first course of action would
21 be to deal with the company.

22 But then kind of stepping back, I think
23 this is -- presumably in your example, the person
24 who wants to do this bug-fixing, for whatever
25 reason, either doesn't want to deal with the company

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 or doesn't -- I'm speculating doesn't want to follow
2 the steps that the company wants him or her to
3 follow and so wants to take some alternate course of
4 action.

5 I think it would be a little bit like
6 one of the examples Emery cited. I mean, suppose I
7 dropped off my clothes at the drycleaner, and I
8 prepaid for them. Just follow me here. But it
9 wasn't convenient for me to come back and pick up my
10 clothes during the hours that the drycleaner was
11 open so I decided I wanted to come back at some
12 completely different time, break into the store and
13 get the clothes.

14 I mean, it seems to me if this computer
15 program were actually covered by technological
16 protection measures -- and I'm not sure it is --
17 your user is putting his convenience above the
18 rights of the company that published the program to
19 protect their property.

20 In other words, he's saying, "I don't
21 want to follow the steps that the company may have
22 provided for me to fix the program. I want to kind
23 of hack it myself." And I think Congress' intent
24 here is clearly that the company should have the
25 right to control it.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. DOUGLASS: Maybe he can't follow the
2 steps. Maybe he can't get a hold of the company.
3 Maybe the company folded or something like that.
4 And, of course, some people might answer "Well,
5 what's the problem? Because the company folded, the
6 company's not around to sue you anyhow."

7 So I mean, I was just trying to get at,
8 you know, if it's an extremely minor glitch and the
9 person was trying to fix a bug to operate the work,
10 whether that should be something within the scope of
11 an exemption, and I get your clear answer so thank
12 you.

13 Bear with me for one second, please. I
14 thought I had a question for you, Mr. Weingarten,
15 but I think I don't right now. If I get it later,
16 maybe I can ask. Thank you.

17 MS. PETERS: Rob.

18 MR. KASUNIC: Good morning. I think I
19 want to start by returning to the issue of reverse
20 engineering for a minute. And just to clarify that,
21 going into the scope of what is a class of works and
22 how reverse engineering fits in.

23 First of all, reverse engineering would
24 be a form of circumvention; wouldn't that be true?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. SIMON: Not necessarily. Not
2 necessarily. If there is no technological
3 protection measure in place, there's no
4 circumvention.

5 MR. KASUNIC: Okay. So if we're dealing
6 with a situation where there's a technological
7 protection measure, then in order to -- if there was
8 an exemption to circumvention, reverse engineering
9 would be a way to accomplish that?

10 MR. SIMON: If you were doing it for the
11 statutorily-permitted purpose.

12 MR. KASUNIC: Okay. And then in terms
13 of -- there was some discussion about class of
14 works, categories of works that talked about finding
15 computer -- that Charlotte had asked whether
16 computer programs could be seen as a class of works.
17 And you said, I think, Mr. Simon, that that could be
18 too broad as a category.

19 When you were citing the legislative
20 history before, in terms of narrowing, you were
21 citing references in the legislative history to
22 narrow it from categories. You were saying a
23 particular part that you mentioned -- for instance,
24 motion pictures were cited as something that could
25 be a category of works.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Isn't computer programs exactly related
2 in that way to -- it's something less than a
3 category, but you talked about things like
4 particular games, for instance. Wouldn't that be
5 something that would be too narrow in that same
6 section of the legislative history?

7 MR. SIMON: No. The legislative history
8 speaks specifically to that issue as well. There
9 are examples in there about motion pictures; there
10 are examples in the legislative history about
11 software as well. And what it does is, it says it's
12 not all of software. It's some subdivision of
13 software.

14 MR. KASUNIC: And so could that
15 subdivision be something related to a particular
16 type of use then, as opposed to just a particular
17 genre of it, like games?

18 MR. SIMON: That's not what the statute
19 speaks to. It speaks to classes of works. It does
20 not speak to uses of classes of works. It talks
21 about users, but it does not -- I mean, there are
22 different people that use different works in
23 different ways. So to define a class of uses, I'm
24 not quite sure how you do that.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 A word-processing application is used by
2 a huge universe of users. So the statute speaks
3 about the users. It doesn't speak about the uses
4 they put it to. If the definition had been
5 contingent upon function or purpose, then that's
6 what the statute would have said. It doesn't.

7 MR. KASUNIC: Well, I'm not sure I
8 understand how you can say that the statute doesn't
9 speak to uses when there is quite an abundance of --
10 the focus being on adverse effect of non-infringing
11 uses.

12 MR. SIMON: No. The statute speaks to
13 users.

14 MR. KASUNIC: It says in Subsection D
15 that "non-infringing uses by persons who are users
16 of a copyrighted work are likely to be adversely
17 affected." So there is certainly a part of the
18 focus is on the particular use that that phrase is
19 used in there. Should we just completely ignore
20 that part?

21 MR. SIMON: Well, maybe I can help you
22 better if you were to explain to me the relevance to
23 the particular example that you're raising of that
24 concept.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. KASUNIC: Well, I'm just trying to
2 focus in how we -- with this class of works and the
3 narrowing, that there is a certain amount of --
4 there isn't anything specifically that says how this
5 can be defined or that necessarily limits within how
6 the Librarian can define a class of works. So that
7 there are certain considerations that are brought
8 into this with non-infringing uses, users and that
9 can go into that consideration of class of works.

10 MR. SIMON: Do you think the fact that
11 this Congress has spoken specifically to the issue
12 of interoperability and reverse engineering for that
13 purpose is relevant to the determination of harm?

14 MR. KASUNIC: Well, I don't think I
15 should be testifying on that. But I would ask you
16 that question.

17 MR. SIMON: Well, I've answered that
18 question. I think it's dispositive on the issue.

19 MR. KASUNIC: But the fact that there is
20 this scope of non-infringing uses, and looking at
21 adverse effects, that that doesn't have -- even if
22 that was found in that particular area of computer
23 programs, that that would not -- because there is
24 some mention of reverse engineering, that that would

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 take this outside the scope of the Librarian's
2 authority?

3 MR. SIMON: The statute speaks to one
4 area where reverse engineering is permitted, and
5 that's for the purpose of interoperability. That
6 was the area where the Congress thought there was a
7 danger, and it spoke to that danger. If it had
8 thought there were other areas where there was a
9 danger in this particular narrow area, it would have
10 spoken to those as well. It did not.

11 So for you to now somehow read the
12 congressional examination as incomplete or as
13 erroneous, and for you to find other areas of danger
14 than the ones that Congress found, I don't quite
15 know how you get there.

16 MR. KASUNIC: Well, isn't an essential
17 part of this whole 1201(a)(1) that it's continuing
18 in nature, that technology does not stay static?
19 And so we have a situation where this has to be
20 monitored over time, and that if changes had
21 occurred from the time when this was initially
22 enacted, there has been some time that has passed,
23 wouldn't that be relevant to our inquiry?

24 MR. SIMON: Sure. Show me the harm.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. KASUNIC: Okay. But it is relevant
2 that conditions can change and that the situation
3 that affected the reverse engineering at the time
4 could at some later time be relevant?

5 MR. SIMON: Hypothetically, anything's
6 possible. Show me the harm.

7 MR. KASUNIC: Let me switch to Mr.
8 Weingarten for a second. There was -- I give you an
9 opportunity, since Mr. Metalitz is not here to
10 respond to -- part of the argument that was made in
11 his comments -- and see what your response would be
12 to the fact he said that Congress spoke to non-
13 infringing uses, but it was primarily speaking to
14 permitted or licensed uses, as opposed to fair use.

15 And the rationale being that fair use is
16 not always a non-infringing use, but that only
17 permitted or authorized uses are really always non-
18 infringing uses. How do you think that that fits
19 into it?

20 MR. WEINGARTEN: It's too torturous for
21 me to deal with. Actually, that's a question of
22 interpretation of law that -- I think you had
23 offered to send me written questions. I would like
24 you to send that question in writing to Arnie. That

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 might be more direct. I don't even understand the
2 question.

3 MR. KASUNIC: Okay. Well, you did talk
4 about fair use as a basic public policy. And how
5 would you explain, then, the absence of the
6 preservation of that basic public policy within the
7 statute itself? There was discussion that Congress
8 had the option of including a broad exemption for
9 fair use within 1201, but chose not to include that
10 as one of the specific exemptions. How would you
11 explain that?

12 MR. WEINGARTEN: It's a very tough,
13 contentious debate. And that law was hotly debated
14 all the way to the end. In fact, these terms of
15 1201 were hotly debated to the end. If Congress
16 hadn't been troubled by it, this ruling wouldn't
17 have been called for.

18 And I think the idea that they
19 established the rulemaking, but established the bar
20 of proof so high that no exemption could be -- you
21 know, nobody could possibly meet that test is to
22 trivialize the decision to establish this.

23 I don't think Congress really was
24 comfortable -- I mean, we're talking about 535
25 people as if they're one person sitting there. But

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I don't think that Congress as a body was fully
2 comfortable with that paradox that I referred to in
3 my testimony that basic public interest was going to
4 be fully served by the restrictions in 1201. And
5 this rulemaking was sort of the uncomfortable
6 compromise that came out of it.

7 So I don't think it would be fair to
8 say, "Well, they decided and didn't clearly exempt
9 non-infringing uses; therefore, they didn't intend
10 to." I think their discomfort is clear, and that
11 this is a meaningful rulemaking because of that.

12 MR. KASUNIC: Well, on the same issue of
13 fair use and the other two DSA panel, Mr. Hughes, in
14 your testimony you mentioned that the goal of
15 copyright is to enable copyright owners to license
16 their works for a fee.

17 There is, however, other case law from
18 that which you cited where the Supreme Court has
19 clearly stated that that's not the primary goal of
20 copyright -- the reward to the owner -- but rather
21 was a secondary consideration, and the primary goal
22 would be the general public benefit.

23 How does -- isn't that something that
24 should be a factor in this balancing that is a part
25 of this process that you folks talked about?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. HUGHES: No, I think absolutely.
2 And we talked about, you know, the different
3 simultaneous goals of copyright law. And indeed, in
4 your rulemaking, I would argue that this five-part
5 test that Emery discussed some of is indeed a
6 balancing exercise.

7 But I think it might be worthwhile just
8 to kind of step back a little bit, and, you know,
9 just keep in perspective why 1201(a)(1)(A) -- too
10 many letters there -- is here in the first place.
11 And that is because Congress recognized, and indeed,
12 the Administration earlier when it was negotiating
13 the WIPO copyright treaties as you all know,
14 recognized what a problem piracy was in the digital
15 age.

16 I mean, we probably don't have time for
17 it, but I could give you lots of examples of ways in
18 which our products have been ripped off and ways in
19 which this section of law will, in a way, help us
20 return as it were to the sort of status quo before
21 the Internet by protecting our products.

22 Because I think it's self-evident that
23 in the copyright world there have always been both
24 legal but also just kind of physical impediments to
25 piracy. I mean, you know, it's physically possible

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 to xerox a book, but it would cost money and it's a
2 pain in the tush. You know, who would want to do
3 it?

4 And what technological protection
5 measures on digital works let us do is basically the
6 same thing: reimpose some sort of difficulty, as it
7 were, in pirating works. In a way, it's a means of
8 self-help. But there's also a very positive thing.

9 1201(a)(1)(A) is not just about us an
10 industry playing defense. I think it's also
11 important to keep in perspective this is really an
12 enabling technology for consumers. I mean, it lets
13 us do all kinds of neat things, and offer all sorts
14 of new technologies that we wouldn't have been able
15 to offer before.

16 I mean, a great example is "trialware,"
17 which you've probably seen if you surf the Internet
18 a fair amount. You know, in the past when you
19 wanted to buy software, you had to go into the
20 store, you'd have to buy the box. And if the
21 software didn't work out for you, you didn't like
22 its features, you'd have to return it. And, indeed,
23 certainly Adobe's license lets you do that, but it's
24 a real bother.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The neat thing about trialware is, from
2 our website for most of our products, you can
3 download a completely functional, full working
4 version of our products with complete documentation.
5 It just has a time-out on it.

6 So after 30 days or 90 days, whatever --
7 you know, we disclose right up front, your time's
8 up. And you as a consumer can then decide if you
9 want to buy it, in which case you get some sort of
10 activation device from us.

11 Now, without the protections of
12 1201(a)(1)(A) this would be a very dangerous
13 exercise to offer this kind of service. I mean,
14 another example is how Adobe some years ago used to
15 market an encrypted CD-ROM called "Type On Call."
16 And we had the whole Adobe library of typefaces, you
17 know, more than \$10,000 worth of retail value,
18 hundreds and hundreds of type fonts on an encrypted
19 CD-ROM.

20 And the idea was if you were a graphic
21 designer at two in the morning, you're finishing up
22 some project for your client, and "Oh, damn. I
23 don't have the font I need." It enabled, in an era
24 when CD-ROMs were really hot, it enabled you to call

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 an 800 number and get an unlock key for that
2 particular font that you wanted to buy.

3 Now, this is in an era before
4 1201(a)(1)(A). What happened was someone cracked
5 the encryption on the CD-ROM, and we basically
6 stopped selling it. And it's a little bit more
7 complicated than that. There were some other
8 reasons as to why we stopped marketing it, but
9 basically we realized that we were, if not naked,
10 wearing sort of fewer clothes than we would have
11 wanted legally, out there basically handing out our
12 products in encrypted form.

13 And our cause of action in going after
14 someone that could put a hack up on the matter of
15 distributed or otherwise, how to get around our
16 encryption -- I mean, there are a lot of dots to
17 connect under a contributory infringement theory to
18 get at stopping that hack. And what 1201(a)(1)(A)
19 does, it lets us put technologies like that
20 encrypted CD-ROM back on the market.

21 So we're excited about the kind of
22 business models this enables -- and you know, we
23 think it will be very good for consumers. And,
24 frankly, we're obviously in business to make -- to
25 do things good for our customers. And if we, as

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 you've heard in testimony today, make things too
2 hard for our customers or we're too onerous in our
3 technological protection measures as to
4 inconvenience them, they'll go elsewhere. We're
5 very conscious of that.

6 MR. KASUNIC: Well, I'd say that Section
7 1201(a)(1) is an effective legal weapon against all
8 these forms of piracy and the use of passwords and
9 serial numbers. Assuming, though, that we found
10 sufficient evidence of adverse effect in some form
11 of non-infringing in some area of computer program.
12 How would we define the class of works that we were
13 going to exempt? Would we just -- would it be
14 computer programs in general, or would it be
15 computer programs related to a specific type of use
16 to -- that would avoid the problem that we -- the
17 specific problem that we have?

18 MR. SIMON: I think that one would have
19 to figure out what the harm is to figure out what
20 the proper remedy is. And for us to ask the
21 question what the proper remedy is in the absence of
22 knowing what the harm is, I don't know. I don't
23 know how to answer that question.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. KASUNIC: All right. So it seems
2 like there could be, then, some relationship --
3 rather than have a general --

4 MR. SIMON: There is quite a tradition
5 in American jurisprudence of tailoring remedies to
6 harm, isn't there? So it would make sense in this
7 instance to show us the harm. If you can identify
8 the harm, you can tailor a response to it. The
9 notion that somehow, because there's a hypothetical
10 possibility of some harm, you're going to simply
11 take all categories of works outside the scope of
12 this cause of action doesn't make any sense. That
13 is not just a shotgun, that's a nuclear device in
14 response to a hypothetical possibility.

15 So the answer to the class question
16 depends on the harm question. And you first need to
17 cross the harm threshold before you can get to the
18 class threshold.

19 MR. KASUNIC: One last thing on the type
20 of protection measures used. You mentioned serial
21 numbers, passwords and access codes. We've also had
22 testimony on one type of protection measure dealing
23 with hardware locks. And I understand that Adobe
24 has used those.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. SIMON: Actually, it's Autodesk that
2 has used those. You're talking about dongles?

3 MR. KASUNIC: Yes.

4 MR. HUGHES: We also use them, and have
5 used them in some of our products.

6 MR. KASUNIC: And what is the specific -
7 - just to get the other side of the perspective on
8 this. What is the purpose of those? Is that an
9 access control measure, or a use control measure, or
10 some combination of the two?

11 MR. HUGHES: As Adobe has used them, as
12 I understand them -- I'm not an engineer, but it's
13 an access control measure. On very high value
14 software that our analysis has shown has a very high
15 likelihood of being pirated, we have gone to the
16 trouble and expense of engineering a dongle.

17 Believe me, it's not something that we
18 do lightly, because it adds to support requirements.
19 The dongle is expensive. Dongles, just like
20 software, get cracked. You know, you can travel in
21 the Far East and you can find dongles for sale.
22 People come up with software patches to go around
23 the dongles.

24 Our users very often tend not to like
25 them much. It certainly -- if you have a computer

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 program that your license may allow you to use on
2 more than one machine, but not simultaneously, if
3 you have a dongle -- obviously, you're going to have
4 to be moving that around from computer to computer.

5 So, you know, it's not something at
6 Adobe that we use lightly. And as far as I know
7 right now, the only major product we use it on is
8 Adobe After Effects, which is a very high-end
9 professional film compositing and special effects
10 program, which sells -- has a retail value of about
11 \$1,000, but is very pirated.

12 The other reason we employ dongles is
13 because, on the access issue we have a real issue
14 with end-user piracy. You know, the term of art in
15 the piracy community. Where a company may buy a
16 couple copies of a given product or license a couple
17 copies, and then install it on more than one
18 machine. And again, the dongle is an
19 effective way to enforce the fact that people
20 actually follow that license provision. But again,
21 we're conscious of inconveniencing our users, and so
22 definitively it's a balance.

23 And I think we trust the market to make
24 this determination, and I would respectfully submit
25 that you should too. Because Adobe competes hard

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 with Microsoft, Macromedia, Apple, Corel, a whole
2 series of cinema-editing type programs. And
3 shareware and freeware.

4 I mean, one of the most capable
5 competitors to Photoshop out there is a program on
6 the Mac platform called "Graphic Converter," which
7 is a piece of freeware developed by this
8 enterprising programmer named Thorsten Lemke who
9 lives in Germany.

10 And so we want to keep Photoshop from
11 being pirated, definitively. But if we cross the
12 boundary in terms of user inconvenience, we're very
13 conscious our customers can go elsewhere.

14 MR. KASUNIC: Thank you. Rachel?

15 MS. GOSLINS: Thank you. Mr. Hughes,
16 are the trialwares you talked about available now on
17 the Acrobat, on the Adobe's website?

18 MR. HUGHES: Yes.

19 MS. GOSLINS: And how long have these
20 been around?

21 MR. HUGHES: I think we at Adobe have
22 made trialware available for about a year. One past
23 impediment to doing it is not only, I think, then
24 the fact that we haven't had the imminent arrival,
25 we hope, of 1201(a)(1)(A). But also there's just

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 bandwidth considerations on the Internet that our
2 programs are -- you know, some of them are a
3 reasonably hefty size. And although, obviously,
4 perform very sveltely and with a 28.8 modem it's
5 just not practical for people to download big
6 programs.

7 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. I'm just confused
8 by your statement that without 1201(a)(1)(A) making
9 these kind of technologies available would not have
10 been possible, when the law hasn't even gone into
11 effect yet. And you don't know whether it will be
12 applicable to your products.

13 MR. HUGHES: Well, I'm not sure I said
14 would not have been possible. If I did I'd like to
15 amend that. I'd say it's a far more dangerous
16 enterprise. Because then someone who distributes a
17 crack that basically disables the expire on the
18 product and turns it into a fully functional
19 program, again, I suppose we'd have to use
20 contributory infringement theory to go after the
21 distributor of the crack. And also, obviously, we'd
22 have the license protection as well.

23 But what Congress was getting at with
24 doing 1201(a)(1)(A), I think was recognizing the
25 pervasiveness of the problem of piracy on the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Internet, of trying to give us an additional cause
2 of action to protect our works.

3 MS. GOSLINS: Yes, but don't you have
4 that cause of action in 1201(b)? You have a cause
5 of action against anyone who designs, produces or
6 manufactures devices that are circumventing your
7 access control protections.

8 MR. SIMON: There are some specific
9 aspects of the software industry which is that, as
10 Paul was mentioning -- one of our problems is large
11 corporate end-user piracy. A company will buy a
12 single copy of a product, then load it on multiple
13 machines. In those circumstances we think that we
14 have a much more powerful cause of action based on
15 1201(a)(1)(A).

16 MS. GOSLINS: And you also, however,
17 have the license requirements, correct? The
18 contractual requirements that come along with the --

19 MR. SIMON: As any good attorney will
20 tell you, you want as many causes of action as you
21 can come up with.

22 MS. GOSLINS: I understand that. I'm
23 just struggling with the idea that any exemption to
24 1201 would be disastrous to the software industry.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. SIMON: It would be. If you
2 characterize it as disastrous, I agree.

3 MS. GOSLINS: Actually, I don't. You
4 do.

5 MR. SIMON: I think it would be a
6 serious problem.

7 MR. HUGHES: And I would say we already
8 have a serious problem.

9 MR. SIMON: You know, the harm for us is
10 today. We lose billions of dollars to piracy. It's
11 not a hypothetical possibility, it's an actual harm.
12 What the Congress determined that this was a remedy
13 appropriate for that actual harm.

14 MS. GOSLINS: And Congress also
15 determined, did it not, that we should do this
16 rulemaking to see when and if exemptions are
17 possible or needed to that prohibition?

18 MR. SIMON: On the presumption the cause
19 of action would stand, unless there was a
20 superseding consideration. Which, frankly, I have
21 not heard any of the testimony coming even close to.

22 MR. HUGHES: And I would say
23 particularly in the area of software, where I think
24 the Congress has addressed -- as we've been
25 discussing with encryption research and reverse

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 engineering and firewall testing, at least to my
2 mind, the conceivable kind of fair use reasons you
3 might need legitimately to circumvent the
4 technological protections on software.

5 I mean, people -- as Emery and I were
6 discussing this yesterday -- with a piece of
7 software I'm not aware of people commonly, or even
8 needing to excerpt sort of a page -- the way you can
9 a page of a book, and make fair use of it. I mean,
10 software's sort of not like that.

11 And technically, you know, it's an all
12 or nothing proposition with the access controls that
13 you're doing your rulemaking under.

14 MS. GOSLINS: Emery, you've given us a
15 lot of examples of what a class of works isn't. I'm
16 curious as to what you think a class of works is.
17 Can you give us an example?

18 MR. SIMON: Not independent of a harm.
19 I think it needs to be decided within the context of
20 the harm. And I think the notion I was answering to
21 another question before, which is -- you know, there
22 is a strong notion in the Copyright Act that
23 remedies should be commensurate with the harm, with
24 injuries. You're talking about a remedy, arguably.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 You're talking about curing a potential harm, first
2 you've got to figure out what the harm is.

3 MS. GOSLINS: I understand that. But
4 your point being that a class of works is something
5 smaller than a category, and something bigger than
6 an individual work. Is there an example of that
7 middle area that you think you could give us as a
8 description of a class of work?

9 MR. SIMON: Well, presumably everything
10 that is smaller than a category and larger than an
11 individual work is a class.

12 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. You made the
13 argument, Emery, that we shouldn't be taking into
14 account chilling effects as something that could be
15 construed as actual or potential harm. And I guess
16 I just want to know why.

17 If we assume for a moment, for purposes
18 of this question, that we have demonstrated to us
19 that if the presence or the threat of prosecution
20 under 1201(a)(1)(A) is deterring people from making
21 legitimate non-infringing uses, why wouldn't that be
22 a harm caused by the statute?

23 MR. SIMON: No, actually I was quite
24 precise on that point. Which is that I don't think
25 a chilling effect should be a dispositive

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 determination. Because, frankly, chilling effects
2 are really easy to find in virtually any context.

3 So it's not -- I mean, a mere chilling
4 effect, a mere cause of my being adverse to doing
5 something is not what the statute requires.

6 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. So I just want to
7 make sure I understand your testimony. You can look
8 at chilling effects, it's just not determinative or
9 the end of the -- shouldn't be the end of the --

10 MR. SIMON: No, the statute speaks
11 specifically about the effect you have to look for,
12 right? It talks about adverse effect.

13 MS. GOSLINS: And is your testimony,
14 then, if we had proof that people were deterred from
15 making legitimate uses because of the presence of
16 1201, wouldn't that be an adverse effect, or would
17 that not be an adverse effect?

18 MR. SIMON: Making legitimate uses.
19 What's a legitimate use? You mean, non-infringing
20 uses? You mean deterred from licensing their
21 products? That's a non-infringing use.

22 So if it would prevent Adobe from
23 licensing its products, would that be a chilling
24 effect? Yes, it could be. If it would prevent the
25 North Carolina Law Library from buying, you know, a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 product from Symantec. Would that be a chilling
2 effect? It could be. It's very hard --

3 MS. GOSLINS: And is that something we
4 should take into account in our determination of
5 whether we've seen a demonstration of actual and
6 potential harm?

7 MR. SIMON: Sure. But that's the kind
8 of testimony you've been hearing. And I am simply
9 positing to you, find harm and find adverse effect.
10 That's what the statute asks you to look for. It
11 does not ask you -- and I apologize for coming back
12 to what I was raising before. Resist temptation.

13 The statute does not require you to
14 create exemptions. It requires you to find harm.
15 If you don't find a harm, the statute says don't do
16 anything. And until somebody actually shows real
17 harm, there's no basis for action here.

18 MS. GOSLINS: I understand that. But
19 what I'm asking is do you think a chilling effect,
20 assuming it was shown, should be included in our
21 determination of whether there's harm or not?

22 MR. SIMON: Give me a specific example.
23 I can't give you a hypothetical answer to that
24 question because anything can constitute a chilling
25 effect. It can be a de minimis chilling effect, or

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 it can be an enormous chilling effect on free
2 speech. It can be -- not that free speech chilling
3 effects are relevant to this, but it can be an
4 enormous public interest chilling effect. And you
5 were quite right in pointing out before that it's
6 the public interest we're looking at here.

7 So I don't know, which chilling effect?
8 If chilling effect as a concept?

9 MS. GOSLINS: Looking at the statute for
10 a moment, as you read the statute, assuming for a
11 moment that we do find a class of works which we
12 recommend to be exempted from the anticircumvention
13 prohibition, then what happens? Is all uses of that
14 -- are all uses of that class of works then exempted
15 from the prohibition, or only non-infringing uses?

16 MR. SIMON: Well, it can't be all uses.
17 Because then we're authorizing infringement.

18 MR. CARSON: No, you're authorizing
19 circumvention at most. You're permitting
20 circumvention.

21 MS. GOSLINS: You can still prosecute
22 them for infringement, presumably. If they then
23 circumvent access control protection and infringed
24 your copyright.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. SIMON: Then I guess I don't
2 understand your question.

3 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Let's assume we
4 find a class of works of that is exempted, and the
5 Librarian recommends it to Congress and that class
6 of works is then listed under (a)(1)(A)(C). From
7 that point, under your reading of the statute, are
8 all uses of that class of works exempted, or only
9 non-infringing uses?

10 MS. PETERS: Or can you basically
11 circumvent the access control for all classes?

12 MR. CARSON: For all uses.

13 MS. PETERS: Yes. Can everybody
14 circumvent for all -- if I'm an individual, can I
15 just circumvent it, period? Because it's one of
16 those classes.

17 MR. SIMON: That can't make sense. That
18 can't be right.

19 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. So how does the
20 statute work? We find a class of works that is
21 unattached to any kind of use or users. And let us
22 just make up a class of works, whether or not --
23 computer games.

24 MR. SIMON: Let's do chemistry
25 textbooks.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. GOSLINS: Okay, chemistry textbooks.
2 And we identify that as a class of works. From that
3 point, is your reading of 1201 that anybody can then
4 circumvent access control protections on chemistry
5 textbooks? Or only people who are then going to
6 make non-infringing uses of them?

7 MR. SIMON: It's got to be the latter.

8 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. And where do you
9 find the authority for that in the statute?

10 MR. SIMON: Well, that's what (d) says.

11 MS. GOSLINS: Great. Okay.

12 MR. CARSON: Can we just -- does anyone
13 have a different view on that?

14 MS. GOSLINS: Sorry, I just didn't ask -
15 - I didn't think you'd want to get into that.

16 (Laughter.)

17 MR. CARSON: No, I've just been enjoying
18 -- do you want to address that issue, Rick or Paul?

19 MR. WEINGARTEN: I've not been -- I have
20 nothing to add to that. We probably will in our
21 reply comments.

22 MS. GOSLINS: All right. I just have
23 one last question for Mr. Hughes, and then a couple
24 questions for you, Mr. Weingarten. Sorry, I know
25 we're getting close to our lunch hour.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Mr. Hughes, you made the argument that
2 we've heard from a number of content owners, that
3 basically a common sense argument that, "Look, we
4 have to serve our consumers. So we're not going to
5 do anything that would make our product less
6 competitive." But isn't that an argument for
7 accommodating, by law and in proceedings such as
8 this one, sections of the user populace that are not
9 protected by the market?

10 Traditionally non-commercial users like
11 universities or libraries, who -- obviously, they
12 constitute their own market, academic markets. But
13 for a majority of the commercially produced products
14 aren't the same as the average consumer that you are
15 aiming your products to. And indeed, often need
16 different kinds of licenses and different kinds of
17 contracts to accommodate the different kinds of uses
18 that they put their products to, put your products
19 to.

20 MR. HUGHES: Ms. Goslins, well, firstly
21 I guess I should say I'm not an attorney. So if I
22 gave a sort of common sense approach to it, that's
23 what I fall back on. It's my years in the foreign
24 service.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 But I almost think you answered the -- I
2 would almost submit that you answered your own
3 question at the very end. I mean, for us and for
4 software companies, educators, libraries, schools,
5 these are actually important commercial markets.
6 And thanks to our freedom to offer licenses, we're
7 in fact able to offer special educational products,
8 special educational prices, special educational
9 terms.

10 In fact, we heard testimony yesterday
11 from one of the people on the library side just
12 sometimes how long these negotiations are that are
13 engaged in. Six months, nine months. But I would
14 say there's no contradiction here. That from
15 Adobe's perspective, we want to see as many people
16 as we can using our products in a way that, frankly,
17 maximizes our revenue and our return for our
18 shareholders.

19 And if there's an educational market to
20 be served, gosh darn it, we'll go after them and do
21 our best to reach a deal that serves both our
22 interests. I'm afraid that's as well as I can
23 answer your question.

24 MS. GOSLINS: Does anybody else have any
25 comments on that? Okay. Mr. Weingarten, I was

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 unclear at the end of the testimony what exactly you
2 would like us to do. Are there specific classes of
3 works you are suggesting that we examine? And if
4 so, what are they?

5 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, I mean, I think
6 the libraries over the course of this hearing, and
7 in our comments, have expressed what we want to do.
8 I understand that there's a profound difference of
9 opinion about how class can be interpreted. We want
10 a broad exemption for non-infringing use for
11 lawfully acquired works. We don't think that's a
12 troublesome thing to understand, or interpret, as
13 has been suggested by some people.

14 We think it's fairly clear. Whether it
15 is within the scope of this rulemaking is a matter
16 of legal debate. And you've heard from Arnie and
17 Julie and Peter, who've suggested it certainly is.
18 And you've heard from other people citing their
19 authority saying it isn't. And I really don't know
20 what I can add to that.

21 Libraries simply do not -- libraries
22 serve an incredible diversity of needs. And on top
23 of that, more and more works that we deal with,
24 digital works, are multimedia. I don't even know,
25 frankly, that categories is going to be much longer

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 within the law a very useful set of determinations.
2 Because things are sliding around, back and forth.

3 So to talk about classes now as a
4 subdivision of categories is -- it seems to me just
5 perpetrates an archaic view of the way the whole
6 information marketplace is evolving. And that is
7 changing rapidly in Internet time the last two years
8 since the bill was passed. It's been several years
9 of Internet time.

10 So, I mean, I think for all of these
11 reasons that you are empowered and ought to consider
12 a broad exemption. And repeating that we are not
13 interested in a broad exemption that essentially
14 legitimizes widespread piracy. We're looking for
15 non-infringing uses.

16 And I think that that would be the
17 appropriate statement for the Librarian to make.

18 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. I just have one
19 last question. In your testimony you cite some
20 quotes from different publishers and content
21 producers about where they think their practice is
22 going. One of them was from a firm who had
23 developed a way for publishers to receive revenue
24 from individual titles. And it says, "Older titles
25 and out of print books that have been read and

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 studied thousands of times over the years in
2 libraries, and yet have not generated new income
3 will now produce new revenues."

4 I guess my question to you is why should
5 that bother us? If we assume that they are still
6 available in all of those libraries, and that what
7 you are getting is a new kind of access that you
8 would not have had prior to this, why shouldn't you
9 pay for that?

10 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, in fact, it seems
11 to me it's not positing a new form of access. It's
12 positing a new revenue stream for access that people
13 have had for many years.

14 MS. GOSLINS: But you still have that
15 access from the library books on the shelves that
16 you could use and study thousands of times without
17 any revenue, right? It's just you're getting an
18 increased access and convenience and speed by
19 getting it digitally.

20 MR. WEINGARTEN: There's a basic trend,
21 of course, to digitizing works. Libraries have
22 limited shelf space, and as we move into the future
23 we're going to be basically shelving, in some sense
24 -- whatever that word means -- digital works.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Yes, there is still this question which
2 has come up. You're sort of indirectly going to
3 that question, "Well, if there's print versions
4 what's the matter with this model for digital?"
5 There's a lot wrong with it, particularly in areas
6 of educational research.

7 Karen yesterday talked about whole new
8 modes of research that are based on digital access
9 to information. We as a nation are busily trying to
10 modernize our schools and our whole education system
11 to use digital products. We're moving towards
12 distance learning models in which students access
13 information and scholars access information
14 remotely. They can't do it from the shelves.

15 So there is not an equivalent here
16 between the digital and the paper version. But the
17 other part of that quote, or the other reason I put
18 that quote in there is that it illustrates who we
19 are striking at the very heart of what libraries do.
20 I mean, libraries have always bought books. We
21 spend over \$2 billion a year in the information
22 marketplace.

23 We don't steal this stuff. We don't
24 break into bookstores, we buy it. And then it's
25 there, it's there for people to use. And you know,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 somehow the presumption of saying, "Well, now
2 publishers can go back in and start recapturing
3 funds for every time a student pulls that book off
4 the shelf."

5 MS. GOSLINS: But they're not making you
6 take the books off the shelf.

7 MR. WEINGARTEN: No, they're not making
8 us take the books off the shelf. These are -- this
9 is a vision for the future. But it is a -- it's a
10 vision that strikes at the very heart of what we do.

11 MS. PETERS: Can I ask one other
12 question that's very related to this? Which really
13 has to do with the -- in the Digital Millennium
14 Copyright Act there was an updating of Section 108.
15 And with respect to a work, a published work that a
16 library owns that is deteriorating or damaged, a
17 library now does have the ability to basically make
18 a digital copy of that work.

19 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

20 MS. PETERS: Doesn't that in some way
21 answer your question?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, it may be. And
23 if so, then there's -- this group won't have any
24 market. But I don't think so. The new products --

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. PETERS: Well, it will get to --
2 what it may get to is the new product may have
3 search and retrieval capabilities that are enhanced,
4 that value-added as opposed to what a library may
5 do. Which is more like a plain vanilla type
6 digitization effort.

7 And if that's true, you know, I would
8 say that the access to the information is still
9 there in the plain vanilla version.

10 MR. WEINGARTEN: It may be. And what I
11 said at the conclusion of my testimony is that we
12 want to be engaged in a discussion with these
13 entrepreneurs to see that, both what we do as
14 libraries and educators, and what they do in terms
15 of their markets converge. There's no reason why it
16 can't converge.

17 But these visions of sort of, "Well, now
18 we can charge for every time a student turns a page,
19 or accesses an old out of print book," is -- I think
20 strikes at the heart of education. And yet it need
21 not. We can, I think, find some way out of it. But
22 I guarantee we're not going to find some way of out
23 it on the floor of Congress, or even within the
24 Beltway.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. PETERS: But we're looking at the
2 adverse effect today, and the adverse effect or
3 potential adverse effect in the next three years.
4 Based on what I'm hearing you say, we don't have
5 that now.

6 MR. WEINGARTEN: We don't have that now.
7 And that may be -- if I could address that point a
8 bit.

9 One, we believe that an exemption done
10 ahead of time serves as a message to the marketplace
11 to develop what I refer to as fair use friendlier,
12 fair use soft technology controls. Or at least pay
13 more attention.

14 I would agree, Adobe undoubtedly finds
15 the academic marketplace a very attractive one, an
16 interesting one, and they always have. The kinds of
17 products they produce are tuned to that.

18 But I would refer back to the testimony
19 of the recording industry association -- and I'm
20 just paraphrasing it now, because I don't have it in
21 front of me -- when you asked, "Well, when are you
22 going to have a library friendly version of a DVD
23 music disk?" The answer was, "Oh, 10 or 20 years.
24 This is not a very important marketplace for us."

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And I would submit that that -- it's
2 that kind of attitude that we need to -- that we
3 don't trust the marketplace independent of an
4 exemption to address. We're always willing to open
5 discussions with these people, and to possibly even
6 help them find new ways to market their goods.

7 MS. PETERS: I think fear and lack of
8 trust have a certain role in all of this. Anyway,
9 Rachel?

10 MS. GOSLINS: I'm done. Thank you.

11 MS. PETERS: David?

12 MR. CARSON: Emery, in your testimony
13 you discussed the assertion that there should be an
14 exemption for works with respect to which initial
15 lawful use has been permitted. Is that accurate?

16 MR. SIMON: Initial lawful access.

17 MR. CARSON: Initial lawful access,
18 okay. And you said Congress specifically decided
19 not to do that. Can you sort of walk us through how
20 that decision came about, or what the manifestations
21 of that conscious decision by Congress?

22 MR. SIMON: There were a series of
23 amendments that were offered first in the House
24 Judiciary Committee, Subcommittee on Courts and
25 Intellectual Property, which considered the bill

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 first. As I recall, Mrs. Lofgren, whose district
2 we're actually in, proposed such an amendment, as
3 did Mr. Boucher of Virginia.

4 And the objective of those amendments --
5 and I forget the exact wording of them -- was very
6 much that. Which is that if you have acquired
7 lawful access to a work, thereafter you may make
8 fair use uses of that work without requiring further
9 permission. And you may circumvent to be able to
10 achieve those ends.

11 And the House Judiciary Committee,
12 Subcommittee in the first instance rejected that.
13 That amendment was a threat -- or a variant of that
14 amendment, but you probably remember this better
15 than I do. Was then considered in the Commerce
16 Committee as well.

17 And I recall Mr. Boucher offering that
18 in the Commerce Committee, and I recall he actually
19 withdrew it before it came to a vote. There was a
20 discussion of it, and then he withdrew his
21 amendment. That's my best recollection. I
22 apologize for it being sketchy, but I'm getting old.

23 MR. CARSON: Anyone have any further
24 recollection to add to that? Emery and Paul, I
25 guess I'd like your reaction to an example I think

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Rick gave. If I, on November 1st of this year, if I
2 gave Rachel my Lexis password and she accessed Lexis
3 using that password, would she be in violation of
4 1201(a)?

5 MR. SIMON: Yes.

6 MR. CARSON: Do you agree, Paul?

7 MR. HUGHES: Gosh, it's not Adobe's
8 business right now. But it's always my business to
9 agree with Emery.

10 MR. CARSON: I think I'm going to have
11 to revisit the question of reverse engineering with
12 you for a moment.

13 MR. SIMON: And you'll get a very
14 creative answers. Responsive answers.

15 MR. CARSON: I want to go back to your
16 last exchange with Rob, because I think you may have
17 admitted something to him. But I'm not sure. I
18 just want to get clarification here.

19 At the end of that discussion did you
20 essentially admit to Rob that if we were to include
21 now, or in three years, or in six years perhaps that
22 anticircumvention measures are preventing users from
23 engaging in lawful reverse engineering, that does
24 not fall within Section 1201(f)? The Librarian
25 would have the power under 1201(a)(1)(A) to create

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 an exemption that would permit circumvention in
2 order to engage in such reverse engineering?

3 MR. SIMON: I think you have to go back
4 to what the statute permits you to do through
5 rulemaking. Which is your statutory authority under
6 rulemaking is not to make the rule conform to
7 whatever court decisions there may be. I think your
8 statutory authority under rulemaking is to find what
9 the statute tells you to find, adverse effect.

10 And that may be found if there are court
11 decisions that have come through time which then
12 cause you to think about those adverse effects. It
13 may not. It is not, as a matter of first instance,
14 your duty to say, "A court opinion and adverse
15 effect are synonymous."

16 MR. CARSON: Okay. I follow all that.
17 But the reason I'm asking this question is, I think
18 in your testimony you were saying something that
19 came close to saying that Section 1201(f) more or
20 less preempts the field with respect to reverse
21 engineering. And that in the 1201(a)(1)(A) process,
22 the Librarian is powerless to do anything in the
23 field of reverse engineering.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Maybe you weren't really saying that.
2 Because I think what you've just said is
3 inconsistent with that.

4 MR. SIMON: Well, let me be quite
5 specific. I think whatever the latitude of the
6 Librarian may be in certain areas, the latitude of
7 the Librarian is substantially diminished in those
8 areas where specific issues have been addressed by
9 the Congress. And those are the exceptions that run
10 starting with additional violations.

11 I'm sorry, not with C but D. Where
12 exceptions for nonprofit libraries, archives and
13 educational institutions already speaks in some
14 respects to that. It speaks to law enforcement,
15 intelligence and other government activities. It
16 speaks to reverse engineering, it speaks to
17 encryption research, it speaks to exceptions
18 regarding minors.

19 There are a whole variety of areas where
20 there was a specific congressional examination.
21 This is not a de novo review of these issues by the
22 Librarian. The Librarian was not asked to do that,
23 the Librarian was asked to look at areas where there
24 are problems.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And I think that in the areas where the
2 Congress has spoken specifically to what the
3 appropriate exceptions are, the latitude and the
4 discretion of the Librarian was substantially
5 diminished. Would I say to you that the Librarian
6 has zero latitude in those areas? I think that
7 would be a ridiculous statement.

8 But is it much less? I think the answer
9 has to be yes. Because otherwise these other
10 exceptions would be meaningless.

11 MR. CARSON: Okay. I follow what you're
12 saying. This may not be the right group of people
13 to ask the question to, but since we're talking
14 about reverse engineering maybe someone can clarify
15 for me. Are there circumstances where, in order to
16 reverse engineer -- and let's assume it's a
17 legitimate need to reverse engineer -- you really
18 would have to circumvent access control measures.
19 Why would that be a requirement in order to reverse
20 engineer?

21 MR. SIMON: I mean, I'm not an engineer
22 but I can tell you what the engineers tell me. What
23 you are -- the permitted act or acts of reverse
24 engineering under the statute are done for the
25 purpose of achieving interoperability.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Interoperability is defined in the statute
2 essentially as an exchange of information between
3 either two software products, or software and a
4 hardware product.

5 The points where that information or
6 exchange occurs may be parts of subroutines, and
7 there may be second-level technological protection
8 measures that are applied with a computer program.
9 There may be a general access control that's applied
10 to the work as a whole, and any second-level
11 protection that's applied to particular --

12 MR. CARSON: All right. I see where
13 you're going. Okay.

14 MR. SIMON: That is, in fact, the reason
15 why Section 1201(f) is there.

16 MR. CARSON: All right.

17 MR. HUGHES: Mr. Carson?

18 MR. CARSON: Yes.

19 MR. HUGHES: If I could I wondered if I
20 could just return to the first question you asked on
21 the Lexis/Nexis passwords. I actually didn't want
22 to leave the impression I was lukewarm in my
23 endorsement of Emery's answer.

24 (Laughter.)

25 MR. SIMON: Won't be the first time.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. HUGHES: And it's not just because
2 he'll kick me under the table, which you would see.
3 But in all seriousness, Adobe in fact is
4 increasingly in this business, and software
5 companies are. And it's not access to databases,
6 but it's what we call -- it's access to programs, as
7 Emery discussed earlier, that are hosted on the
8 Internet.

9 And in fact Adobe has a service right
10 now where you can basically lease access to a PDF
11 Creation tool on the web. You can basically go to a
12 website, you've got a Microsoft Word document.
13 Let's say you want to make it PDF. For \$10 a month
14 you can get unlimited access to this ability to
15 upload a file. It will be crunched on our servers
16 into a PDF and you'll get it back.

17 Now, clearly, it seems to me, that the
18 dissemination of my password if I posted it on the
19 Internet to allow sort of everyone in the world
20 using my password to use this service -- and the
21 password is an access control measure, that's why we
22 have it there -- I, by posting the password with
23 that intent would be circumventing the access
24 control.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So my answer to your question is yes,
2 and a very firm yes.

3 MR. CARSON: Okay. We heard Paul talk
4 about trialware. And I think he explained it pretty
5 clearly to me. Is it pretty clear to you what
6 trialware is?

7 MR. WEINGARTEN: Pardon?

8 MR. CARSON: Trialware?

9 MR. WEINGARTEN: Trialware, yes.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay. Let's take a case
11 where someone gets access to trialware under those
12 terms that are associated with it. And maybe have
13 access for 30 days, and on the 31st day you can no
14 longer use it. Would it be your position, in
15 connection with the notion that once you've lawfully
16 acquired possession or use of a work you should be
17 able to circumvent, would it be your position that
18 on that 31st day or the 31st month thereafter one
19 should be able to circumvent in order to gain access
20 to the computer program that you first obtained
21 access to as trialware?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: No. And I think Lolly,
23 in fact, addressed this question yesterday. That if
24 you have access to a toolwork for a specific period
25 of time, and that's the agreement you entered into

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 when you got the work, on the 31st day you don't
2 have lawful access to the work. And I think that's
3 perfectly fair.

4 We are not interested in a license to
5 hack or steal, or circumvent license terms.

6 MR. CARSON: And yet you do say that
7 your concerned, as a general proposition, about the
8 notion that a content provider can use access
9 control measures to enforce licensing terms. I
10 mean, this is a licensing term, isn't it?

11 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

12 MR. CARSON: So which licensing terms
13 are you concerned about, and which are you not
14 concerned about? And how does one draw the line?

15 MR. WEINGARTEN: I'm not concerned about
16 you addressing any specific licensing term, I'm
17 concerned about using 1201 in conjunction with
18 technological measures to add the force of federal
19 criminal law on users. On the user's side of a
20 license. That's what I'm objecting to.

21 MR. CARSON: All right. Let me see if I
22 understand what you're saying, then. Going back to
23 the trialware example, you would object to the use
24 of Section 1201 to create civil liability or
25 criminal liability with respect to a person who, on

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 that 31st day or the 31st month, circumvents in
2 order to use the trialware, is that what you're
3 saying?

4 MR. WEINGARTEN: Probably not. Because
5 we established that the circumvention would not be a
6 non-infringing use.

7 MR. CARSON: We've established that?

8 MR. WEINGARTEN: Didn't we? Well, I
9 mean --

10 MR. CARSON: That wasn't part of my
11 hypothetical.

12 MR. WEINGARTEN: I mean, you asked me if
13 I would want the exemption to include that, and I
14 said no. Because the work was no longer lawfully
15 acquired.

16 MR. CARSON: Okay. But what I think I'm
17 hearing you say -- and maybe I'm not hearing it
18 clearly enough -- is that licensing terms, okay,
19 fine. Licensing terms are what they are, and people
20 perhaps should abide by them.

21 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

22 MR. CARSON: But as a general
23 proposition one shouldn't be able to use Section
24 1201 to create civil or criminal liability for

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 circumventing technological access control measures
2 designed to enforce the licensing terms.

3 MR. WEINGARTEN: Right.

4 MR. CARSON: But then again, I think
5 you've just told me that there's one exception at
6 least, and that's the trialware exception. Where
7 it's okay to use Section 1201 to prevent someone
8 from accessing that trialware way down the road, or
9 are you not saying that?

10 MR. WEINGARTEN: If I'm no longer in
11 legal possession of it. I mean, I'm not in
12 violation of the license. If I still have that
13 stuff after the expiration of the license, I'm not
14 under license. So, you know, I'm having trouble --
15 let's posit that there's some way that, say the
16 trialware has limited capabilities. Some trialware
17 does operate that way.

18 I don't know, it's hard because programs
19 are not exactly what libraries exercise fair use.
20 So suppose it was a trial work, and it had limited
21 capabilities, and we circumvented to make a non-
22 infringing use of it during the period of time that
23 we legitimately had access to it as a trial work.

24 If we violate the contract, the license,
25 the publisher, content provider is perfectly right

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 to go after in a breach of contract or some such
2 cause. I do not want 1201 to make a felony out of
3 that.

4 After the term of agreement is over, and
5 I no longer have legal access, I'm not under the
6 contract. We're not talking about a violation of
7 contract. I don't have lawful access, and it
8 doesn't fall under the exemption that we're seeking.

9 MR. CARSON: All right. Let's take a
10 different contractual term. Let's say we have a
11 contractual term that says only one person may gain
12 access to that particular work at a time. And you
13 decide, "This is silly. I've got three people in
14 the library who want to use it right now. Why
15 shouldn't they be able to use it? They're using it
16 for research, that's fair use. So I think I should
17 be able to circumvent," not withstanding the fact
18 that there's a contractual term limiting access to
19 one person.

20 Would it be your position that Section
21 1201 should not be operative, and you should be able
22 to circumvent to let three people use it at a time?

23 MR. WEINGARTEN: Those are two separate
24 things. One, yes, it's my position that 1201 should
25 not be operative, that it's breach of contract. I'm

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 not saying people should do it. I'm not saying
2 people should violate their contract terms, I'm
3 saying I don't want the weight of federal criminal
4 law sitting on the users, when if the content
5 provider violates terms of the contract it's just
6 breach of contract and so sue me. I want an equal
7 playing field. And it licenses what I wanted
8 resolved under is contract law, not federal
9 copyright law.

10 MR. CARSON: Except when the contractual
11 term is a term -- it has to do with the period of
12 time in which you can use it. I gather you're
13 saying there's an exception. And if the contract
14 says you could only use it for a month --

15 MR. WEINGARTEN: No. It's not
16 exception. I'm not under the contract at the
17 expiration of the month.

18 MR. CARSON: But you are under the
19 contract when you're letting three people use it,
20 even though the contract permits only one person to
21 use it?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: Yes, that's a violation
23 of contract.

24 MS. PETERS: But this is exactly the
25 end-user argument that I think you were making.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. SIMON: Well, I mean, this is a huge
2 issue for us. And it's a huge issue for us on two
3 different grounds. One is we do side licensing.
4 And we will side license to Stanford University a
5 copy of "Photoshop" for 100 users. And then you
6 have 15,000 students using it. That's clearly a
7 breach of contract. No problem.

8 Now, the question becomes one -- but it
9 was educational, it was fair use. Is that a defense
10 of breach of contract? Well, I see Lolly shaking
11 her head. But I apologize, Lolly, the American
12 Library Association's been taking the position in
13 the course of enacting the UCITA that that should be
14 a defense to breach of contract. That's an
15 untenable position as well.

16 So Rachel was asking me before a
17 question about various causes of action. So now
18 we're back to a situation where we have these 15,000
19 infringers as well as circumventurists at Stanford
20 University. We need both causes of action because
21 while you say with certainty that, "Oh, this should
22 be done under contract theories," it's not clear
23 that we would win under those contract theories in
24 every instance.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 We still have infringement, we still
2 have harm being done to us, we still have wrongs
3 being done. And what you're suggesting is -- I
4 think what you're ultimately coming down to is
5 you're afraid of the criminal liability.

6 MR. WEINGARTEN: If it's infringement,
7 if it's an infringement you have just as much cause
8 of action under 1201. I'm looking for non-
9 infringing uses. I don't see any difference here.

10 MR. SIMON: I mean, I guess --

11 MR. WEINGARTEN: I'm not trying to argue
12 with a lawyer.

13 MS. PETERS: No, I know. But it's an
14 important point. Because the criminal is willful
15 for commercial purposes or private gain, and yet in
16 the context that you're using with your Stanford
17 case, there should have been a license for 15,000
18 students, correct?

19 MR. SIMON: Yes. Now, is that willful,
20 is that for commercial gain? Well, the way the
21 statute actually now reads, it's not direct
22 commercial gain, it's actually loss or revenue
23 counts as well.

24 So, yes, I think -- but, look.
25 Ultimately the reality is -- and I can't speak for

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 other industries, but from a software industry
2 perspective, we're really not interested in putting
3 Stanford University in jail. What we're interested
4 in doing is selling them 15,000 copies of
5 "Photoshop."

6 That's what we want to do, sell -- you
7 know, we want the criminal sanctions there because
8 we think they create an effective deterrent. But
9 the reality is we want to sell product. That's what
10 we want to do. And suggesting somehow that a
11 contract-based cause of action alone, given the
12 realities we're confronting in the marketplace right
13 now is sufficient, is just not true.

14 Now, maybe libraries and educators are
15 nicer than most people. Well, they're certainly
16 better looking. And it may be easier to deal with
17 nice people, but the problem is there's no real way
18 to parse this law between nice users and bad users.
19 You guys kept on asking me, "Tell me who a user is."

20 Well, can you parse it by nice users and
21 un-nice users? You can't. You can't do these kinds
22 of things that easily. It's all context specific.

23 MR. CARSON: Well, when we're talking
24 about criminal liability, you can parse the law with
25 respect to certain kinds of users who simply -- you

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 can't have criminal liability with. 1204(d) exempts
2 libraries, nonprofit libraries and educational
3 institutions, for example.

4 MR. SIMON: Correct. But again, those
5 are not issues for this rulemaking, those are issues
6 of the operation of law.

7 MS. GOSLINS: Absolutely.

8 MR. CARSON: Rick, I think most of the
9 testimony we've heard from other representatives of
10 libraries -- and I'm not sure, you said it seems to
11 be implicit, but let me clarify it first. The types
12 of technological measures, access control measures
13 you're concerned with so far seem to be access
14 control measures that are enforcing contractual or
15 licensing terms. Is that, as a general proposition,
16 the case?

17 When you run into those technological
18 measures, or when you run into those licensing
19 terms, that the licensee had the opportunity in
20 exchange for, perhaps, a payment of more money to
21 get licensing terms that would have permitted the
22 very act that you're trying to circumvent in order
23 to be able to do it.

24 MR. WEINGARTEN: There's probably no
25 single answer to that. I mean, I'm not a working

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 librarian and so I don't know. But you've heard
2 from Karen yesterday that there are times when she
3 has to negotiate for a year or more in order to get
4 terms she needs. And she has told me, so I guess
5 this is secondhand, she's told me that there's
6 simply been times when she has not been able to
7 mount products because she couldn't get the terms.

8 But there are two other issues. One is
9 that the technological controls become embedded in
10 the product itself, and are part of the product.
11 You really can't -- it's no longer negotiable. And
12 we think that this is going to be, these licenses
13 are going to be less and less negotiable for these
14 sorts of terms.

15 There are, of course, products, an
16 increasing number of products that come with click-
17 on or shrink-wrap licenses where there's no
18 negotiation whatsoever, we mentioned UCITA which
19 covers those sorts of products. So I don't think
20 there's any single answer.

21 Yes, if it's a question of, "Well, we'd
22 like three students or three users instead of one
23 user to use it," I'm sure that the provider is
24 perfectly willing to say, "Well, okay. That will
25 cost you this much." Or, "We would like this much

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 stuff on it, or like the ability to print out of
2 it," or whatever. There are negotiable prices in
3 some cases. But certainly not in all.

4 MR. CARSON: Well, let's take a case
5 like that, where, in fact, the provider is perfectly
6 willing to license you to let three people use it
7 rather than one. But you decide you don't want to
8 pay that price. You'll just take the license for
9 one, and if we want three people to do it we'll
10 circumvent.

11 If that case were to arise and that was
12 the choice you made, would it be your position that
13 even though you had the opportunity to negotiate a
14 deal that would give you the right for access for
15 three users, you should be able to circumvent with
16 impunity?

17 MR. WEINGARTEN: Certainly not.

18 MR. CARSON: Okay. 1201 should be able
19 to -- should be operative in that case, then?

20 MR. WEINGARTEN: No.

21 MR. CARSON: No?

22 MR. WEINGARTEN: No. That contract law
23 should be operative, not 1201.

24 MR. CARSON: And why not 1201?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. WEINGARTEN: Well, if a court were
2 to determine -- no, I'll take that back. I was too
3 quick on that. That if you violated the terms of
4 the -- one, if you violated the terms of the
5 contract, that's contract law. If somebody took
6 action under 1201 against you, or against the user,
7 and the court determined that it was not a fair use
8 under whatever theory of argument, then 1201 would
9 apply.

10 If the court said, "Well, you may have
11 violated the contract, but it was a fair use under
12 copyright law, 1201 does not apply, although you
13 still may be in breach of contract." I mean, people
14 give up their fair use rights in contract all the
15 time. It's various kinds of rights for various
16 purposes, and that's their right, as I said, as
17 consenting adults, to do so. And we do not
18 recommend that they be scofflaws, or violate their
19 contract.

20 MS. PETERS: Well, I just want to take
21 over. If a library today buys a book, only one
22 person at a time can use that book, right?

23 MR. WEINGARTEN: For the most part, yes.

24 MS. PETERS: So if, when you now are
25 buying a package you have a choice with regard to

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the simultaneous accesses that you're going to
2 provide, which really you're substituting for, in
3 essence, the number of books that you would have on
4 the shelves so you could serve so many people at a
5 time.

6 So I guess I have a hard time figuring
7 out why that rises to the level of a fair use.

8 MR. WEINGARTEN: I didn't say it. I
9 don't think I said it did. I think I said -- I just
10 said if a court decides it didn't. And the court,
11 you're right, the court may well decide that that's
12 not fair use.

13 MS. PETERS: Okay. Do any of you have
14 anything else that you'd like to add at this point?
15 Does anyone else have any questions?

16 (No response.)

17 MS. PETERS: All right. What are we
18 going to do this afternoon? First of all, before I
19 get there, I want to thank the witnesses. They were
20 extremely helpful, and I really do appreciate your
21 testimony and appearing here.

22 Second, we don't know whether or not we
23 will have Mr. Metalitz this afternoon, but we do
24 know that we will have people who can appear earlier
25 than the two o'clock. Because of the time frame,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 what we're going to suggest is that we start at
2 1:30. Not suggest, we are deciding and announcing
3 that we will be starting at 1:30.

4 Thank you.

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 A-F-T-E-R-N-O-O-N S-E-S-S-I-O-N

2 (1:35 p.m.)

3 MS. PETERS: Good afternoon. Welcome to
4 the last session of our last day of hearings. We're
5 fortunate that Steve Metalitz made it here after a
6 long and difficult trek. And what we've decided to
7 do is to let Steve present the testimony that he
8 would have presented this morning, and then we will
9 just ask questions of him. And then we'll take the
10 panel that we had intended, if it works out that
11 way.

12 So, it's all yours, Steve.

13 MR. METALITZ: Thank you very much. And
14 thank you, particularly, for accommodating the
15 vagaries of my travel schedule. I should have known
16 when I was about to step on Flight 301 from Chicago
17 to San Jose that it would be pre-empted. And indeed
18 it was, but I did get here eventually.

19 I'll try to be brief, because I am
20 infringing on your schedule here. I wanted just to
21 start by going back to the basics, which I'm sure
22 have been reviewed several times in the last few
23 days, as well as two weeks ago.

24 Congress established this rulemaking
25 proceeding to answer a single question: Should the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 October 2000 effective date of the statutory cause
2 of action against circumvention of access control
3 measures be delayed with respect to any particular
4 class of copyrighted works? That's the first basic.

5 And the second basic, as in any
6 proceeding, is who has the burden of persuasion. I
7 think it's clear that those who believe that the
8 circumvention of access controls should remain legal
9 after October 28 bear that burden, including the
10 burden of defining as to what particular class of
11 work the prohibition should not go into effect.

12 On behalf of the 17 copyrighted owner
13 organizations that I represent, we feel that clearly
14 the answer to the question Congress has asked is no,
15 that as to no classes of works should the Section
16 1201(a)(1) prohibition not come into effect.

17 And on the second question of the
18 burden, it follows we don't believe the burden has
19 been met to show that there's a need for any
20 exception in this area.

21 This is a substantial burden, and I
22 think everyone has recognized that. Some of the
23 testimony you heard in Washington called it an
24 illusory goal, or an unattainable dream, stated that

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 it was impossible for anyone ever to meet this
2 burden. I don't agree.

3 This burden could be met if the
4 proponents of an exception had specific, strong and
5 persuasive evidence of the likely effects of the
6 prohibition on the ability of users to make non-
7 infringing uses of particular classes of works.
8 That burden can be met, but it hasn't been met.
9 Because that type of evidence has not been presented
10 to you.

11 You've received a huge volume of
12 evidence, but most of that does not address the
13 question, the only question that Congress directed
14 you to answer. And what does address that question
15 doesn't come close to carrying that burden.

16 It seems as though some of the
17 participants in this proceeding want to treat it as
18 an open-ended discussion about the impact of
19 technology on the way copyrighted materials are
20 created and produced, marketed and distributed, on
21 the effect of those technological changes on the
22 relationships among creators, intermediaries,
23 customers and other stakeholders.

24 If that's what we were about here, the
25 copyright industries and the copyright owner

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 organizations would have a lot to contribute to that
2 discussion. We have a lot of concerns about those
3 issues. But that's not what this proceeding is
4 about. You're not here as moderators of a gripe
5 session, or of an open-ended discussion. You're
6 here as decision-makers or as recommenders of
7 decisions on whether an act of Congress should take
8 effect as scheduled.

9 You have a specific job to do, you have
10 specific ground rules under which that job should be
11 carried out, and I'd like to focus on those. The
12 question before you, and the quantity of the
13 evidence that's been presented to you. And whether
14 it matches up to the burden that Congress has set in
15 this proceeding.

16 Now, we've explained in our reply
17 comments, which were quite extensive, why we think
18 most of the evidence that's been submitted, at least
19 so far, is not really relevant to this proceeding.
20 It's aimed at answering other questions that
21 Congress actually not only didn't direct you to
22 answer, but Congress has already answered.

23 Questions such as whether copyright
24 owners should have the right to employ technological
25 measures to control or manage access to their works.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Questions such as what scope of exception should be
2 provided for reverse engineering. Questions such as
3 what should the relationship be between the
4 anticircumvention prohibitions and the concept of
5 fair use.

6 Those questions have been asked and
7 answered, and to provide opinions on them in this
8 proceeding really is of no value to you. They don't
9 shed any light on the single question that Congress
10 asked you to answer.

11 Now, a few of the submissions that
12 you've received have sought to propose particular
13 classes of works as to which circumvention of access
14 control should remain legal after October 28th. In
15 our view, none of those proposals pass muster. Most
16 of them didn't really designate a class of works.

17 They really talked about an exemption
18 based on the status of the user of a work. That's
19 an approach that Congress considered during the
20 deliberations on the DMCA, but that Congress
21 ultimately rejected.

22 And when there has been an attempt in
23 this proceeding to identify a class of works, upon
24 close examination it proves to be an extremely

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 expansive class, and it's boundaries are very
2 difficult to define.

3 But I think the main flaw of all these
4 proposals is that they're not based on any specific
5 evidence that the ability to make non-infringing
6 uses of works would be harmed if Section 1201(a)(1)
7 came into effect for all works, as Congress
8 provided.

9 There have been a limited number of
10 anecdotes that have been put forward as evidence of
11 an adverse effect, but they don't withstand
12 scrutiny. Even to the extent that any real threat
13 of harm has been demonstrated, you have to balance
14 that against the evidence that the use of access
15 control measures has increased, and not decreased
16 the availability of works for non-infringing uses
17 since Congress directed this proceeding to undertake
18 a net calculation.

19 Let me just say a word about the concept
20 of particular classes of works. I know this has
21 been a frustration to the members of the panel, to
22 try to solve this conundrum that Congress has given
23 it.

24 The question of what constitutes a
25 particular class of works can't be answered in the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 abstract. And from our perspective, trying to
2 answer that at this point would be like asking us to
3 categorize or classify the specific angels that are
4 dancing on the head of a pin. We'd be glad to try,
5 but we just don't see any.

6 And until we see some evidence of
7 specific adverse impacts, it's very difficult to
8 figure out whether you can design a particular class
9 of works that covers those adverse impacts.

10 If you agree with this, and if at the
11 end of the day as you assess the evidence, you don't
12 think that the adverse impact has been demonstrated,
13 you may want to take the approach of not addressing
14 the question of what would constitute a particular
15 class of works. You may want to leave flexibility
16 for yourselves and your successors three years from
17 now in the next triennial proceeding, when the
18 evidentiary record may be more complete.

19 At that time, if there is evidence of
20 specific adverse impacts, that would be a point at
21 which you'll need to decide whether that evidence
22 can be organized to define particular classes of
23 works.

24 Let me turn to, three issues that were
25 quite prominent in the hearings in Washington. In

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 fact they're implicit in all of the testimony, but I
2 think the Washington testimony brought them to the
3 fore. And as I understand it, some of them have
4 been revisited here.

5 The first is the question of initial
6 lawful access, the second is the focus of this
7 proceeding on fair use, and third is what I would
8 call the bugaboo of pay-per-use.

9 First, the notion that it should be
10 permissible to tamper with access controls as long
11 as they manage something other than initial access
12 to copyrighted materials. I call this the initial
13 lawful access approach, because that's what its
14 proponents called it two years ago when they sought
15 to persuade Congress that these second-level
16 controls, or persistent access controls ought to be
17 fair game for circumvention.

18 They weren't able to persuade Congress
19 then, and for that reason perhaps they don't use the
20 phrase as much now. But it's basically the same
21 approach.

22 This approach sees access controls as an
23 on/off switch, and nothing more. Or in fact as
24 something less, because under this analysis once
25 access is switched on it can never be switched off.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 In this view every license is a perpetual license,
2 or should be. Subscribers to copyrighted materials,
3 like diamonds, are forever.

4 That's the approach that underlies
5 Professor Jaszi's suggestion, for example, that
6 works embodied in copies which have been lawfully
7 acquired by users who subsequently seek to make non-
8 infringing uses thereof, that those users ought to
9 be free to circumvent access controls in that
10 endeavor.

11 This rulemaking may originally, at one
12 point, have been intended to give a privileged
13 status to those who claim to have achieved initial
14 lawful access to a copy of a work. But Congress
15 thought better of this approach. It was dropped
16 like a stone when the bill reached the conference
17 committee.

18 And the reasons for Congress' change of
19 mind are, I think, not hard to understand. The
20 concept that people who obtain initial lawful access
21 ought to be free to circumvent thereafter is
22 antithetical to promoting the availability of
23 copyrighted works. If the on switch can never be
24 turned off, there's little incentive ever to provide
25 initial access in the first place.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 By contrast these second-level controls,
2 or persistent access controls as some have called
3 them, are being used to maximize access by the
4 greatest number of users in the most efficient
5 manner permitted by digital technology.

6 For example, time-limited access, which
7 is an example of this type of persistent access
8 control. It's not a new concept, it's not a radical
9 concept. And certainly the library community is
10 familiar with it because the most familiar example
11 might be the public library, where borrowing a book
12 does not entitle you to keep it forever. The video
13 rental store operates on the same principle.

14 Technological measures have been used
15 for decades to enforce time-limited access to
16 copyrighted materials. Once your subscription to a
17 premium cable service expires, scrambling technology
18 denies you access to reruns of the programs to which
19 you once enjoyed initial lawful access. Black boxes
20 aimed at overcoming this access control mechanism
21 have been outlawed for many years.

22 Libraries and our research institutions
23 seemed to have survived this development. So it's a
24 little hard to understand the intensity of their
25 expressed concern that extending this model to

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 online and other digital media will be fatal to
2 their future.

3 Of course, they're more used to dealing
4 with the traditional environment in which purchase
5 of a physical copy entitled the purchaser to
6 perpetual access to the work it contained. But as
7 long ago as 1976 Congress made it clear that to
8 equate the copy with the work is a fallacy.

9 You heard testimony earlier this month
10 from David Mirchin of Silver Platter that made it
11 clear that libraries have functioned successfully
12 for years in an environment which includes so-called
13 second-level access controls, such as a licensed
14 limit on the number of simultaneous users.

15 And I think it's significant that,
16 according to all the testimony I heard -- and
17 perhaps you heard something different in the last
18 day -- libraries haven't found it necessary to
19 circumvent the existing access control measure in
20 order to deliver to their users the enhanced and
21 expanded access to copyrighted materials that
22 digital technology enables.

23 It's really hard to conclude from this
24 evidence that cataclysmic changes will occur, or any
25 significant adverse effect, once the legal

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 prohibition against circumvention comes into force
2 on October 28th. Some witnesses have told you that
3 Congress really didn't have these persistent or
4 second-level access controls in mind when it enacted
5 Section 1201(a).

6 I think if you look at the legislative
7 history it's clear that this is exactly what
8 Congress had in mind when it talked about access
9 controls. The House Manager's Report gives the
10 example of an access control that "would not
11 necessarily prevent access to the work altogether,
12 but could be designed to allow access during a
13 limited time period, such as during a period of
14 library borrowing."

15 The House Manager cited this as an
16 example of a technological measure that would
17 "support new ways of disseminating copyrighted
18 materials to users, and safeguard the availability
19 of legitimate uses of those materials by
20 individuals."

21 So in fact Congress not only was aware
22 of these technologies, it counted them on the
23 positive side of the ledger, and encouraged you to
24 count them on the positive side of the ledger in
25 trying to figure out the impact of access controls

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 on the availability of works for non-infringing
2 uses.

3 Let me speak a word about non-infringing
4 uses. Congress didn't ask about the impact of the
5 circumvention prohibition on fair use, it asked
6 about its impact on non-infringing use. And, of
7 course, that's a much broader category. It includes
8 fair use, but it also includes licensed or permitted
9 uses.

10 I had the feeling from some of the
11 testimony and submissions that licensed uses really
12 don't count, because they depend upon the agreement
13 with the copyright owner. It's the same theory that
14 makes the apples that you filch from the orchard
15 taste a little sweeter than those that you buy at
16 the store. But from the standpoint of the end-user,
17 it's hard to see the relevance of this distinction.

18 I think Congress took the same view,
19 which is a practical view. So long as the public is
20 able to make use of these materials without
21 violating the copyright law, why is that
22 availability somehow tainted, if it takes place with
23 the consent of the copyright owner?

24 I think the mindset that reads non-
25 infringing use to mean only fair use helps explain

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 why the witnesses, again, were not able to come up
2 with any concrete instances in which circumvention
3 of technological measures is necessary to serve
4 library patrons, or students or researchers.

5 Time and again you were told that there
6 are potential problems, but that they so far have
7 been resolved in negotiations with the copyright
8 owner. This may be disappointing to some of the
9 intermediaries who are shouldering the burden of
10 persuading you that there should be exceptions to
11 Section 1201(a)(1). But it's good news for the end-
12 user, and that's the party on whose benefit Congress
13 directed that this proceeding be carried out.

14 Finally, let me just say a word about
15 pay-per-use. This is a pricing strategy that we
16 find in some areas of the copyright market. And
17 some of your witnesses portrayed it as not only
18 fatal to the American scholarly enterprise, but
19 actually unconstitutional.

20 Pay-per-use, like time-limited access,
21 has a very distinguished pedigree. Look back to the
22 first concert or play for which admission was ever
23 charged, which was a pay-per-use of the performance
24 of copyrighted work. Up to the present day this is
25 widely used for the delivery of some types of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 performances by cable, satellite, over the Internet.

2 Interestingly, the area where it's
3 probably made the least inroads is in the academic
4 and library markets. Pay-per-use -- or rather, I
5 should say, unmetered use is probably much more
6 prevalent today than it was 10 or 15 years ago, when
7 you had connect time charging, per-search pricing
8 and these other pricing strategies that are less
9 common today.

10 In fact, you could make the argument
11 that, under some circumstances, pay-per-use may be a
12 cheaper and more efficient means for libraries and
13 educational institutions to serve their
14 constituencies than the unlimited use model which
15 currently prevails.

16 I think what we'll see, that we've seen
17 so far, is that where that argument has merit the
18 market develops in that fashion. Where pay-per-use
19 is disfavored for whatever reason, it will remain an
20 exception and not the norm. But for your purposes,
21 the purposes of this proceeding, I think the
22 opponents of pay-per-use have failed to make any
23 persuasive showing that the pay-per-use model will
24 become more prevalent unless the effective date of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Section 1201(a)(1)(A) is delayed for some particular
2 class of works.

3 And even if they were able to carry that
4 burden, they would still have to show that such an
5 outcome would be likely to lead in balance to the
6 adverse impact which Congress was concerned to
7 prevent, and which Congress directed your attention
8 to.

9 All this gets back to the evidence, how
10 it matches up with the burden that Congress imposed.
11 And I think on review of the evidence, I would
12 suggest to you that there's really not enough
13 concrete evidence on which the Librarian could
14 rationally base a finding that an adverse impact is
15 likely to occur if Section 1201(a)(1)(A) goes into
16 effect on schedule.

17 You've heard from witnesses their
18 apprehensions about pay-per-use and persistent
19 access controls, but many of those same witnesses
20 said that so far they haven't encountered those
21 phenomena. They're worried about licensing terms
22 that will be inflexible or intrusive. Some of the
23 witnesses quite candidly asked you to use this
24 proceeding to improve their bargaining position.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So far these problems have not
2 materialized. They predict that it will be
3 necessary to circumvent access controls in the
4 future. And therefore they ask you to stop the
5 congressional prohibition on that behavior from
6 taking effect. But so far, even though it is not
7 currently a violation of law to circumvent these
8 measures in most cases, they can't point to a single
9 instance where they've needed to do so.

10 In short, in a proceeding which must be
11 based on facts, these witnesses have bought you
12 fears. And the evidentiary foundation they
13 presented is too flimsy to support a decision to
14 delay the effective date of Section 1201(a)(1)(A)
15 for any class of works.

16 On behalf of the organizations
17 representing a broad spectrum of U.S. copyright
18 owners, I urge you to recommend to the Librarian
19 that the cause of action for circumvention of access
20 control measures take effect as scheduled, for all
21 works protected by copyright.

22 Thank you again for your indulgence in
23 my tardiness. And I'd be glad to answer any
24 questions.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. PETERS: Thank you for managing to
2 make it here. I want to start the questioning with
3 Rob.

4 MR. KASUNIC: Good afternoon. Suppose I
5 told you that yesterday we heard compelling and
6 highly specific testimony that there was a
7 demonstrable adverse effect from access control
8 measures utilized in a particular class of works,
9 namely motion pictures. And in addition, these
10 motion pictures were only available in digital
11 format. So, a sole source situation.

12 How would we define a coherent, well-
13 defined class of works? Would we exempt all motion
14 pictures as a class, so that anyone could circumvent
15 these technological protection measures, both
16 purchasers and pirates, or would we define the class
17 as motion pictures that were lawfully acquired?

18 MR. METALITZ: Well, I can't really
19 answer a hypothetical question, based on the
20 evidence that I'm not familiar with. But I think,
21 in general, if you were convinced that there had
22 been this -- or that there was a likelihood of this
23 significant adverse impact, you would then need to
24 try to fashion a definition that would be neither
25 under-inclusive nor over-inclusive.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 One that would capture the types of
2 works as to which that impact had been demonstrated,
3 and didn't go far afield into areas where that
4 adverse effect hadn't been demonstrated, or didn't
5 appear to be likely.

6 Congress obviously didn't give you a lot
7 of guidance on this, but they did suggest that it
8 ought to be a particularized determination. And
9 something that was simply based on one type of
10 protective technology was not appropriate, that a
11 definition based on one category or description of
12 users probably wasn't appropriate.

13 That the touchstone is what class of
14 works can you describe as to which the -- again, not
15 the use of the access controls, that's not the issue
16 -- but the prohibition against circumvention of the
17 access controls would be likely to achieve that
18 adverse impact.

19 So I doubt that it would be a category
20 as broad as all motion pictures. I doubt that it
21 would be a category as broad as all motion pictures
22 in a particular technological format. But, again,
23 that's the kind of question that I find it very
24 difficult to answer in the absence of evidence.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Because, for one thing, it may bind your
2 hands -- or those of your successors -- when they
3 actually have to deal with evidence that there has
4 been significant adverse impact. So I think caution
5 is probably advised in this area, except and unless
6 -- except to the extent that you are persuaded that
7 the proponents of an exception had met their burden.

8 MR. KASUNIC: In the legislative history
9 there was discussion in the House Judiciary Report,
10 early on, that "[p]aragraph 1(a)(1) does not apply
11 to subsequent actions of a person once he or she has
12 obtained authorized access to a copy of a work
13 protected under Title 17, even if such action
14 involves circumvention of additional forms of
15 technological protection measures."

16 Doesn't this passage support the
17 proposed exemption by some groups that classes of
18 works that are initially lawfully accessed should be
19 -- you should be able to circumvent?

20 MR. METALITZ: Well, I think to the
21 extent that it does, you have to look at the whole
22 legislative history. That provision was in the
23 House Judiciary Report, which is at an early state.
24 It did refer to 1201(a)(1) which is now

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 1201(a)(1)(A), and I don't think there's been any
2 change in that language.

3 But I think if you look at the
4 legislative history underlying this proceeding, and
5 how you're supposed to answer that question, what
6 issues you're supposed to look at, it's clear that
7 Congress thought that access control mechanisms that
8 applied after "initial lawful access," could have a
9 use-facilitating or use-enhancing effect. And that
10 they were a positive element in the calculus for
11 what the impact of these technologies -- and even
12 more importantly -- of the prohibition would be on
13 the availability of works for non-infringing uses.
14 So I think you'd have to put that observation in
15 that context.

16 MR. KASUNIC: We had discussed, earlier
17 this morning, some of the statements in the comments
18 on reverse engineering. And in your comment, as
19 well, there was a discussion that Section 1201(f)
20 would prohibit the Librarian from making a
21 determination on this area of -- within the scope of
22 1201(a)(1)(A). That because Congress had already
23 acted in that area, that there was no room.

24 Is that something that would be -- in
25 terms of changes in technology, if this was -- those

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 exemptions were done at a specific point in time, if
2 at some point in time adverse effects were shown in
3 relation to that, would reverse engineering be
4 something that the Librarian would be prevented from
5 addressing?

6 MR. METALITZ: Well, it depends on what
7 they would be. 1201(a)(1), as you know, of course,
8 is not in effect. It is not now a violation to
9 circumvent access control measures for the purpose
10 of reverse engineering, whether or not that reverse
11 engineering would be infringing under the copyright
12 law or not.

13 On October 28th, it will be illegal to
14 do that. But only within the scope of what
15 1201(a)(1) provides, and Section 1201(f) provides an
16 exception to Section 1201(a)(1) in certain
17 circumstances. And to kind of oversimplify it,
18 perhaps a little bit, if the circumvention is
19 necessary in order to obtain information in a
20 reverse engineering context that would not
21 constitute an infringement, then there's an
22 exception to Section 1201(a)(1) as well.

23 So that's an area where the scope of the
24 circumvention prohibition is linked with issues of
25 infringement to a great extent, if not exactly the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 full extent. So if in the future, you found that
2 people -- because they couldn't circumvent in the
3 circumstances that didn't fall within the Section
4 1201(f) exception, because those circumventions
5 remained illegal, that therefore caused an adverse
6 impact on the availability of works for non-
7 infringing uses, then you would be in the realm of
8 the kind of things that the triennial proceedings is
9 supposed to look at.

10 But it doesn't look at Section
11 1201(a)(1) in a vacuum. Section 1201(a)(1), when it
12 goes into effect, will be subject to exceptions for
13 reverse engineering, for computer security, for
14 encryption research. I think those are the
15 principal ones, and there may be others as well.

16 So that's the prohibition whose impact
17 you're supposed to assess, either today its
18 anticipated impact, or three years from now its
19 actual impact, as well as anticipated over the
20 following three years. I don't know if that answers
21 your question.

22 MR. KASUNIC: Yes. We have also heard a
23 lot of evidence or rather, a lot of testimony from
24 the library community and educators that this would
25 cause the prohibition, and Section 1201(a)(1) would

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 cause a chilling effect. And to what extent is a
2 chilling effect an adverse effect -- something that
3 should be considered -- or is the likelihood of a
4 chilling effect something that should be considered?

5 MR. METALITZ: I'm not sure what it
6 would be a chilling effect on. Usually, that term
7 is used in the First Amendment context. Is that
8 what --

9 MR. KASUNIC: A chilling effect on
10 making fair use determinations. With some of the
11 criminal ramifications and civil penalties involved,
12 and the uncertainty with a number of the terms that
13 are involved in Section 1201(a)(1) -- there has been
14 the claim that there is a certain amount of
15 vagueness to some of the terms -- that this
16 uncertainty would really prevent librarians who, it
17 was stated, were by their nature cautious, from
18 exercising privileges. The penalties and
19 ambiguities would cause a chilling effect on the use
20 of certain privileges that existed.

21 MR. METALITZ: I think it would help in
22 evaluating that claim if we knew what types of
23 activities were being chilled. The whole chilling
24 concept is, you know, how close to the line of
25 legality do you encourage people to go. And the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 evidence so far is that they're all the way across
2 the room from the line of legality.

3 When you asked the witnesses in
4 Washington whether they had ever had to circumvent
5 access controls in order to serve their patrons, the
6 answer was no. And when they raised fears about
7 some of the areas where this might happen, such as
8 with the image databases and so forth, you pressed
9 them.

10 It seemed to me that the evidence was
11 that they'd been able to resolve this in
12 negotiations with the copyright owners. So that
13 doesn't sound as though they've been chilled yet.
14 Because every time they felt cold, they've been able
15 to find some warmth somewhere.

16 So I think you'd have to know more about
17 what types of activities they claim they were
18 discouraged from undertaking before you could
19 evaluate whether a chilling effect was something
20 that amounted to a significant adverse impact, as
21 Congress directed you to assess.

22 MR. KASUNIC: Thanks. That's all I
23 have.

24 MS. PETERS: Thank you. Rachel?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. GOSLINS: Mr. Metalitz, I think
2 we've asked this question of almost every content
3 owner representative in front of us. And I think
4 we've yet to get an answer we can take to the bank.
5 But I'm going to try again.

6 You have all provided us with numerous
7 examples of what is not a class of works. And I'm
8 curious as to whether you have an example of what
9 might a class of works.

10 MR. METALITZ: Well, I'm not sure you're
11 going to be able to bank any more on what I'm saying
12 than what the others have said. And I'd like to
13 explain the reason why. I've referred to this in my
14 testimony.

15 When you're dealing with a null set, it
16 is extremely difficult to categorize it, or classify
17 it. The danger of doing that is that you set up
18 rules that, in the hypothetical situation, that may
19 not be the right ones when your set is no longer
20 null, and you actually have some examples of adverse
21 impact.

22 You know, I recall your dialogue about
23 this with Mr. Lutzker. Some things that he said I
24 wouldn't disagree with. For example, it doesn't
25 necessarily have to be a subset of the categories of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 works in the Act -- not an exhaustive list -- that's
2 laid out in the act of the cross-cutting. Or you
3 could say a class includes elements from more than
4 one of those categories.

5 But, again, it's very hard to answer
6 that when we think we're dealing with -- from our
7 perspective, we're dealing with nothing. We're
8 dealing with a null set. Let's see the examples,
9 let's find the clear cases of adverse impact. Then
10 it would be more realistic to try to say, "Well, can
11 we define a particular class of works that kind of
12 covers that waterfront?"

13 MS. GOSLINS: I had a similar discussion
14 with Mr. Simon this morning, and he similarly said
15 you have look at the harm. The problem, I think, in
16 that is that on one hand we have significant amount
17 of content owners telling us we shouldn't look at
18 uses or users in defining a class of works. On the
19 other hand, how can you look at harm without looking
20 at who is being harmed, and what they're doing in
21 which they're suffering the harm?

22 So it's hard to recommend -- do you have
23 any suggests on reconciling -- defining classes by
24 who is being harmed, and what they're doing, on one

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 hand. And not looking at uses or users on the
2 other.

3 MR. METALITZ: I think when you're
4 looking at the evidence, you have to look at the
5 uses and the users. Because you're going to have
6 examples. The example will be User X is unable to
7 make this particular type of non-infringing use of
8 this particular work, because of the prohibition
9 against circumventing access controls on that work.

10 Then you no longer have a null set.
11 You'd have an example, you'd have at least a
12 species. And then you'd have to try to figure out -
13 - and maybe if you have two species or three
14 species, then you'd try to figure out what's the
15 generic class of works that covers those examples.

16 So I don't think it's irrelevant. I
17 think the examples that you would get obviously have
18 to have some explanation of who the user is, and
19 what use it is that they wish to make, or are unable
20 to make. But then at that point you have to go to
21 the next level of analysis and define a particular
22 class of works that covers that. Again, we don't
23 see that first step has been shown.

24 MS. GOSLINS: As I understood one of the
25 points in your argument, was that non-infringing

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 uses should cover -- what we should be looking at is
2 adverse impacts on other things, such as licensed
3 uses or specifically-permitted uses under specific
4 exemptions.

5 And I think, in fact, we have heard some
6 examples of problems in those categories. In the
7 Washington hearings we had a gentleman who talked
8 extensively about dongles, and what happens when you
9 have a lost or damaged dongle. You still have an
10 operating license, but you're unable to replace it
11 because the company isn't willing, or it's out of
12 business.

13 Yesterday -- I don't think you were here
14 -- but Lolly Gassaway representing the AAU and
15 several other organizations, talked about a CD that
16 she had in her library where the content expired,
17 even though there was no license term restricting
18 the content. Restricting the time or limiting the
19 time that the content should have been available.
20 So that was a mistake situation.

21 We also had testimony about libraries'
22 statutory rights to lend certain things like books
23 or software programs. And their inability to do so
24 if the material is encrypted, because they wouldn't

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 be able to lend the decryption key to the person to
2 whom they were lending the object.

3 So we do have examples of ways in which
4 people may be prohibited from making uses that would
5 be permissible under their license or under the
6 statute. And I'm just curious as to how you would
7 respond to those.

8 MR. METALITZ: Well, let me take it in
9 reverse order. The decryption key issue, if I
10 understand it, is really a question of whether
11 there's a license agreement that is not -- you
12 referred, I think, to a statutory right to lend
13 something, and that certainly is a right that can be
14 modified by a license agreement.

15 So that when a library, let's say,
16 acquires a piece of software, they, I would think,
17 ordinarily do so subject to a license that states
18 the circumstances under which it can be lent. So I
19 think that's really --

20 MS. GOSLINS: But let's assume there's
21 not a license. If a library purchases a copy of
22 Steven King's e-book, "Riding A Bullet," I think
23 it's called. It can only be played on the computer
24 which downloads that for that content.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And even if there's no licensing term
2 restricting them from lending the book, checking it
3 out to the extent that they could do so
4 technologically, they're incapable of doing so
5 because of the access control protections.

6 MR. METALITZ: Well, I think you're
7 going to hear more about that in the next panel.
8 Because that's a species of the general problem,
9 which is whether the acquisition of a copy -- to say
10 it that way -- necessarily brings with it the right
11 to play that copy, use that copy on a machine of
12 one's own choosing. Or, rather, on the one that the
13 copyright owner intended that it be used on.

14 I think that would be an expansion of
15 what ordinarily has been considered the privileges
16 of the user. It's kind of like saying if you bought
17 a Betamax tape, you have to be able to play it on a
18 VHS machine, and vice versa. Again, these are not
19 always problems that are as new as we sometimes
20 think they are.

21 MS. GOSLINS: But, historically, the
22 Copyright Act does go out of its way to ensure
23 libraries have the ability to do certain things that
24 a normal individual user wouldn't have. Like

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 archive, and like lend, and like preserve materials.
2 I mean, that is --

3 MR. METALITZ: Right. Section 108 gives
4 them those privileges. And I think that was -- if I
5 understood it, that was your second example that
6 Lolly -- was that a preservation issue that she was
7 raising?

8 MS. GOSLINS: No. She had purchased --
9 my understanding is she had purchased a CD without
10 any time restriction on it, and the material
11 expired. And after a fair amount of time she was
12 able to get the manufacturer to replace it, because
13 it had been a mistake.

14 MR. METALITZ: And, you know, if her
15 library has bought defective books -- that the
16 bindings came apart and the pages fell apart
17 quickly, too. You know, this happens. And I don't
18 know that it's a copyright infringement when that
19 occurs.

20 The preservation issue, as you
21 mentioned, there are privileges as far as the
22 ability to copy. And I think the issue you'd have
23 to look at there is what exactly is it that the
24 library or archive wants to do that they're unable
25 to do without circumventing access controls.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 In some cases what they're concerned
2 about is a copy control. They have it, they have
3 access to it, but they can't copy it to move it from
4 a fragile medium to a better medium, or from an
5 obsolete medium to a non-obsolete medium. And that's
6 a Section 108 issue, as to the copyright side. It's
7 a non-issue to the extent that 1201 affects it,
8 because as you know, it's not a violation to
9 circumvent a copy control.

10 So those are instances in which they
11 don't need to violate 1201(a)(1) in order to achieve
12 their objective. Then you have some circumstances,
13 I would think, in which even if they did violate
14 Section 1201(a)(1) once it comes into effect, they
15 still wouldn't achieve their objective.

16 If you have something that is in a
17 medium where the hardware no longer exists or isn't
18 accessible for you to play it, then the fact that
19 you have a decryption key that you can use once you
20 get it on a piece of compatible hardware doesn't
21 really help you.

22 So whether or not they circumvent
23 Section 1201(a)(1) isn't going to have a direct
24 impact on the ability to make non-infringing uses.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 But, again, I would come back to the
2 question of what's the status quo? What's happening
3 today? Today, aside from the cable area and a few
4 other areas, it's not illegal to circumvent access
5 controls. Where are the instances in which
6 libraries are forced to do this in order to gain
7 access to this material?

8 Or are they able to gain it in other
9 ways, either by locating another library that has
10 the material in a usable format, and then using one
11 of the exceptions in the Copyright Act to be able to
12 gain access to it that way, or by dealing with the
13 copyright owners. I think you'd have to look at the
14 specifics.

15 MS. GOSLINS: But if we just look at a
16 narrow category in which the owner of -- or a user
17 of a product has a license or the legal entitled to
18 do something. And for some reason in this very
19 narrow category, other than arguably the intent of
20 the copyright owner, they are prohibited from doing
21 so by access control protections -- either because
22 it's malfunctioning or because they can't get a
23 replacement for their dongle, because the copyright
24 owner has gone out of business or isn't responding
25 to their calls.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 In those situations do you think -- and
2 let's assume they want to make non-infringing use --
3 in those situations do you think it would be
4 appropriate to allow them to circumvent the access
5 control?

6 MR. METALITZ: I think, again, you'd
7 have to look at the specifics. The dongle
8 situation, in some cases the copyright owner, as I
9 recall the testimony, was out of business. And the
10 witness had built a thriving business on perhaps
11 violating Section 1201(a)(2).

12 I don't know whether that's the case or
13 not, or 1201(b)(1) -- because in many cases these
14 would be copy controls. But in any case he seemed
15 to be having the business unmolested of providing
16 these solutions to them.

17 But the other thing that he was unhappy
18 about was that in the case of some of this high-end
19 software the copyright owner was saying, "Well, if
20 you buy it with the dongle, and you lose the dongle,
21 you have to buy another copy of the software." It
22 seems to me that's a market issue more than a
23 copyright issue. Unless you think there's an
24 entitlement to a particular license term which is,
25 if you lose the dongle you get a new one free.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I don't think that the copyright law
2 dictates that, nor do I think that that would be a
3 good reason to intervene and bring the -- or hold up
4 the applicability of Section 1201(a)(1). So, you'd
5 have to look at the specifics.

6 MS. GOSLINS: All right. One final
7 question, just sort of a statutory interpretation
8 question. So if you have a copy of the DMCA handy -
9 - I don't know if you do. You might be able to just
10 answer this without looking at it.

11 In your understanding of the statute,
12 let's assume for a moment that we were to exempt a
13 particular class of works, assuming we could figure
14 out what one was. So we recommend to the Librarian,
15 who recommends to Congress that a certain class of
16 works be exempted, and that's accepted. Then what
17 happens?

18 Are all uses of that -- of anything in
19 that particular class of works then exempted from
20 the Section 1201(a)(1) prohibition, or only non-
21 infringing uses?

22 MR. METALITZ: Well, I don't think you
23 have the authority to decide whether infringing uses
24 are excused. That's a copyright law issue, not a
25 Section 1201 issue. What the Librarian has the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 authority to decide without going back to Congress,
2 is whether the Section 1201(a)(1) prohibition will
3 go into effect for a particular class of works.

4 MS. GOSLINS: And that's what I'm
5 focusing on, what it means to go into effect. If we
6 recommend a class of works which is accepted, then
7 what is the effect of that exemption? Is it that
8 from that point on, anything -- let's use chemistry
9 textbooks. We recommend chemistry textbooks as a --
10 I know the chemists are going to come after us. I
11 won't keep using that example.

12 We recommend chemistry textbooks as a
13 class of works that's exempted, and that's accepted.
14 Then can anyone circumvent access control
15 protections to a chemistry textbook, or only people
16 who intend to make non-infringing uses of it?

17 MR. METALITZ: It would depend on how
18 you define the particular class of works. Because
19 if you define a particular class of work as
20 chemistry textbooks, then I assume that if someone
21 brought a Section 1201(a)(1) action against someone
22 for circumventing the access control on the
23 chemistry textbooks, that that would not be a valid
24 cause of action, at least until October 28, 2003.
25 At that point it would be a valid cause of action,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 unless you made a new determination that chemistry
2 textbooks --

3 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Can I ask you to
4 look at 1201(a)(1)(D). I apologize, it's a little
5 dense as far as provisions go, and I don't mean to
6 spring it on you now.

7 MR. METALITZ: No apologies are needed.

8 MS. GOSLINS: We've had some testimony
9 that once the Librarian publishes an exempted class
10 of works, then -- as you'll see by the last sort of
11 two lines in it, "the prohibition contained in
12 Subparagraph A should not apply to such users,"
13 meaning non-infringing users.

14 MR. METALITZ: No, it doesn't mean that.
15 It means a user who circumvents. I remember this --
16 I know what you're driving at here, because this was
17 from the earlier testimony. In fact, when we go
18 back and look at 1201(1)(a), "prohibition shall not
19 apply to persons who are users of a copyrighted
20 work." And this is the point I think Arnie Lutzker
21 was making.

22 The reason it says that is, the only
23 person who can be guilty of a violation of Section
24 1201(a)(1) is a user of the work. That's the person
25 who circumvents an access control measure. You

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 don't bring that claim, that cause of action
2 against, for example, somebody who posts the
3 decryption algorithm on the Internet. That person
4 may not be circumventing, but they're trafficking in
5 the tools of circumvention. That's a 1201(a)(2)
6 issue.

7 But Section 1201(a)(1), the defendant is
8 the user who circumvents an access control. And
9 what you have the power to recommend, or the
10 Librarian has the power to decide, is which users
11 can do that without violating the law for that
12 three-year period.

13 MS. GOSLINS: Not really which users,
14 right? Which classes of works, that can be done,
15 too.

16 MR. METALITZ: That's correct. If the
17 user is circumventing the access control for a
18 particular class of work, and that happens to fall
19 within the particular class of work that you have
20 identified, then that person is immune from
21 liability under Section 1201(a)(1).

22 You have to say "user" because you don't
23 sue the work. The defendant is not the work, the
24 defendant is not the particular class of work. It's
25 a user of a particular class of work who is

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 privileged -- if you so decide and if the Librarian
2 agrees -- to circumvent an access control measure
3 during a specified period of time.

4 MS. GOSLINS: But if you look at
5 Subsection D -- and I don't mean to argue with you
6 here, I'm just trying to understand myself as I go
7 through this statute. It says, "The Librarian shall
8 publish any class of copyrighted works for which the
9 Librarian has determined pursuant to the rulemaking
10 conducted under Subparagraph C, that non-infringing
11 uses by persons who are users of a copyrighted work
12 are or are likely to be adversely affected. And the
13 prohibition contained in Subparagraph A shall not
14 apply to such users with respect to such class of
15 works."

16 So why would they say "such users"
17 unless they were referring to the users who were
18 making the non-infringing uses? The persons who
19 were making non-infringing uses?

20 MR. METALITZ: Well, the people who want
21 to make non-infringing uses are adversely affected
22 in their ability to do that. That's the threshold
23 that you have to cross in order to make that
24 determination. If you find that there isn't an
25 adverse impact on non-infringing uses, then we're

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 not going to designate that particular class of
2 work.

3 But once you designate that particular
4 class of work, it's not that 1201(a)(1)(A) doesn't
5 apply to those uses, it doesn't apply to those
6 users, such users. And I would think that that
7 refers back to persons who are users of a
8 copyrighted work, rather than the non-infringing
9 uses. That's a threshold question you have to
10 decide.

11 MS. GOSLINS: But then wouldn't such be
12 totally redundant? And why wouldn't it just say the
13 prohibition contained in Subparagraph A shall not
14 apply to users with respect to such class of works.
15 Or the prohibition contained in Subparagraph A shall
16 not apply to such class of works.

17 MR. METALITZ: I think the reason it
18 doesn't say the latter is probably because the claim
19 is not brought against a class of works, it's
20 brought against a user.

21 So your question is inevitably -- in
22 other words, in your particular class of work only
23 applied to --

24 MS. GOSLINS: The prohibition, the
25 exemption would only apply to people who were

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 circumventing access control protections for that
2 particular class of works who were making non-
3 infringing uses thereof.

4 MR. METALITZ: Well, I think if you were
5 able to maintain a perfect fit between what the
6 evidence showed and what the scope of your
7 particular class was, that that would be the
8 outcome. Because you would be able to tailor the
9 particular class to only cover the evidence that you
10 were persuaded by, that showed this adverse impact.

11 MR. CARSON: I just want to make sure.
12 I think I'm following you, but I just want to make
13 sure we're absolutely clear on this.

14 Let's assume that we determine that
15 motion pictures are one of those classes. I'm not
16 saying we're going to, but just for sake of the
17 example. Let's say Rachel is a professor of film
18 history at some university, and I'm someone who
19 manufactures illicit CDs or DVDs of motion pictures.

20 Now, motion pictures, maybe even motion
21 pictures on DVDs, have been exempted from this. Are
22 you saying that when Rachel wants to do this, in
23 order to excerpt -- to make excerpts from motion
24 pictures to show to her class in an instructional
25 context, she's able to take advantage of that

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 exemption to circumvent. That, I gather, would be
2 clear. Are you following me so far?

3 MR. METALITZ: Yes.

4 MR. CARSON: And because that class is
5 exempted, if I want to take advantage of the ability
6 to circumvent so that I can make all sorts of copies
7 and market them, I would also be exempt because
8 we've exempted that class. Is that what you're
9 saying?

10 MR. METALITZ: I think this follows from
11 the independence of the infringement action from the
12 1201 liability. The fact that you were making an --
13 that you were setting out to infringe means you're
14 going to be guilty of copyright infringement.

15 MR. CARSON: Okay. A representative of
16 at least one of the people whom you represent right
17 now, this morning took exactly the opposite point of
18 view. So you might want to clarify just what your
19 view, or the views of all the people you're
20 representing, actually are on that. Not that it's
21 dispositive of the issue, but it would help us
22 perhaps to know whether you're speaking with one
23 voice, or what on that issue.

24 MR. METALITZ: Well, we're a very
25 diverse group, as you know.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 (Laughter.)

2 MR. METALITZ: We've already had one
3 member of our group tell you that the whole idea of
4 recognizing particular classes of works is
5 unconstitutional, which I don't think is our
6 unanimous view.

7 But I think this helps to illustrate
8 some of the difficulties you run into when you're
9 talking about this in hypothetical terms. And I
10 know you have to operate that way, but it becomes
11 difficult to answer these questions in the absence
12 of concrete evidence of adverse impact. And
13 thankfully, I think Congress recognized that.

14 They said you shouldn't find any class,
15 you shouldn't even delve into these issues of what
16 constitutes a particular class, and whether it
17 necessarily includes users who are ultimately making
18 infringing uses, or ultimately making non-infringing
19 uses, unless you have specific strong and persuasive
20 evidence that this is likely to occur.

21 If you have that, then maybe it becomes
22 a little bit easier to answer these questions. And
23 part of them could be answered, to some degree,
24 definitionally. How clearly do you define a
25 particular class of works? I'm not saying that's a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 panacea in all these cases, but I think it
2 illustrates the wisdom of waiting until you have
3 concrete evidence before you try to answer that
4 question.

5 MS. DOUGLASS: I have just a couple of
6 quick, kind of broad questions. And I hope they
7 don't indicate that I have one view or another.
8 It's just that I'm trying to put some clothes on a
9 stick figure in my mind, as far as some of these
10 concepts are concerned. And thinking that it might
11 be helpful to laypeople as well.

12 You said earlier that, I believe,
13 although some others were saying that the burden of
14 showing specific adverse effects could not be met,
15 it can be met. And I understand that this might be
16 a statement against self-interest or something, but
17 I'm going to ask the question anyway.

18 Could you tell me how the burden might
19 be -- how might one show adverse effects? Just for
20 purposes of understanding.

21 MR. METALITZ: Well, I can give one
22 example that may be helpful in that regard. If the
23 library witnesses told you that they had to
24 circumvent access controls in order to serve their
25 patrons, and that was the only alternative that they

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 had. And they were doing it on a daily basis, and
2 that there was a link to the particular non-
3 infringing use that they would otherwise be unable
4 to do. Certainly that would be stronger evidence
5 than what they've come forward with so far,
6 particularly at this juncture.

7 You know, in one sense the proponents of
8 the exception do have a tougher burden now, because
9 the prohibition hasn't gone into effect. So you
10 can't say that anyone has been adversely affected by
11 it yet, at least within the scope of that
12 prohibition. But you could, in theory, have
13 evidence that shows the likelihood of an adverse
14 impact, which was that today this was a necessity, a
15 central element of the way that libraries did
16 business. And that if they had to stop doing it on
17 October 28, 2000, XYZ effects would occur.

18 I'm disagreeing with the statements that
19 you heard that said that basically Congress has sent
20 you on a fool's errand here, and this burden could
21 never be met. I don't think Congress did send you
22 on a fool's errand, I think the burden could be met
23 if the evidence were there. But it should be
24 brought forward. I don't think it has been met, but
25 I don't think it's impossible.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. DOUGLASS: I'm trying to think of a
2 line between adverse effect and mere inconvenience.
3 And I'm trying to place, at least, something on one
4 side or the other. And I'm thinking of a situation
5 where a library can either use a digitally-encrypted
6 -- circumvent a digitally-encrypted work, or can go
7 to 12 different other sources and get that same
8 material. Would that be an adverse effect or would
9 that be an inconvenience? Or is it harder than
10 that?

11 MR. METALITZ: Well, I think it is
12 difficult to draw the bright line. The examples
13 that have been given about people having to come in
14 late at night to get access because there is a
15 limitation on the number of simultaneous users. I'm
16 not sure that would be an adverse effect at all, but
17 if it is, it belongs in the mere inconvenience
18 category.

19 The issue of availability of
20 alternatives is an important issue -- and I think
21 it's the one you've raised. It doesn't have to be
22 complete substitutability. I think the fact that it
23 is more inconvenient to assemble the material from
24 other sources, rather than to decrypt it -- that
25 could be in the category of mere inconvenience.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I guess the question I would ask in that
2 situation is why is licensed access unavailable? Or
3 did the library simply choose, for whatever reason -
4 - and it could be a very good reason -- not to
5 license access to that material, or to stop
6 licensing access to that material.

7 I mean, as a consequence of that it may
8 become more inconvenient for them to serve certain
9 users. But I think that's the result, certainly not
10 of Section 1201(a)(1) and not even of the use of
11 access controls. It's really a consequence of a
12 decision the library has made, juggling its
13 priorities and deciding which users it will give
14 priority to, basically.

15 MS. DOUGLASS: Again, for purposes of
16 understanding. I'm wondering if it could be said
17 that anticircumvention amounts to a per se
18 imposition of liability for non-infringing use. And
19 if that's not correct, why not? And if it is
20 correct, why?

21 MR. METALITZ: Well, the cause of action
22 for infringement and the cause of action for a
23 violation of anticircumvention prohibitions are two
24 separate claims. Two separate causes of action.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So, it's certainly true that someone
2 could be liable for a violation of Section 1201
3 without being liable for copyright infringement.
4 And we've already seen examples of that in the cases
5 that have come up under 1201(a)(2) and (b)(1). They
6 may or may not involve copyright infringement, but
7 it's an independent cause of action. I don't know
8 if that's responsive to your question.

9 MS. DOUGLASS: I think it is. Thank
10 you.

11 MR. CARSON: Steve, I'd like to get your
12 reaction to one example that was brought up this
13 morning. Let's assume it's November 1st. I happen
14 to have a subscription otherwise Lexis, I have a
15 Lexis ID. Rachel doesn't. She wants to do some
16 legal research, so I give her my ID and she uses it.
17 Has she violated Section 1201(a)?

18 MR. METALITZ: Has she violated it by
19 using your, or have you violated it by giving it to
20 her?

21 MR. CARSON: Well, have either of us
22 violated it? Is that circumvention of a
23 technological measure that controls access?

24 MR. METALITZ: I mean, she's using your
25 password presumably with your permission.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: But certainly not with
2 Lexis' permission, right?

3 MR. METALITZ: Right. And it certainly
4 -- let's assume. I don't know, but let's assume
5 it's a violation of the Lexis license agreement
6 which it was the day before October 28th. I think
7 that's probably how that issue would be resolved.

8 Is it a -- it's a question of whether
9 she is circumventing an access control measure, and
10 a password often has that role.

11 MR. CARSON: So I gather what you're
12 saying is that if an unauthorized person uses an
13 authorized password, that is a violation of the
14 anticircumvention provision?

15 MR. METALITZ: I don't know that it
16 would be. Because I think you'd have to see what
17 the apparent authority of the person who gave the
18 password was. You get into those agency questions.
19 But if you're saying could it be a violation, yes,
20 it could be.

21 MR. CARSON: Okay. Can you help me out
22 by letting me know what the purpose of having this
23 rulemaking is? I'm not saying what are we supposed
24 to be doing, but what is the purpose for having this
25 rulemaking?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. METALITZ: I think the purpose for
2 having the rulemaking is that while Congress had an
3 expectation of how things would evolve, they didn't
4 have complete certainty about how the use of
5 technologies and online digital technologies would
6 evolve. How the marketplace would evolve.

7 And although they expected -- at least
8 the House Manager Report said they thought -- the
9 likeliest outcome would be that the use of
10 technological measures backed up by Section
11 1201(a)(1) and the other 1201 prohibitions would
12 lead to greater availability, greater access to
13 material for non-infringing, that it was possible
14 that that would not happen.

15 So I think the purpose of it is Congress
16 built in a safety valve into this system, and your
17 job is to see whether there is, in fact, steam
18 passing through that safety valve. But
19 it's got to be pretty hot before you can blow the
20 whistle. And I'm about to crash my metaphor here,
21 but I think the safety valve function is what
22 Congress asked you to perform. I'm not sure if that
23 answers your question.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: Well, it's an answer and
2 it's a good answer. I'm not sure it totally answers
3 what I was trying to get at.

4 MR. METALITZ: Well, try again.

5 MR. CARSON: Well, if we were to
6 recommend that a particular class be exempt, what
7 would we be trying to accomplish, or who would we be
8 trying to help by doing that?

9 MR. METALITZ: I think you would be
10 trying to help the end-users who, if you found such
11 a class, would in the absence of your action be
12 substantially adversely impacted in their ability to
13 make non-infringing uses for that particular class
14 of works.

15 So I think you have to look at the end-
16 user. As I said in my statement, I think that's on
17 whose behalf this rulemaking is proceeding. I think
18 at the same time you obviously have to take into
19 account other factors -- as I said, it's a net
20 calculation.

21 And you have to take into account what
22 are the ways in which the use of technological
23 control measures, backed up by this legal provision
24 have increased availability, have increased access.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So you have to take into account those interests as
2 well.

3 But you're looking at the user who is
4 substantially adversely impacted in his ability to
5 make non-infringing uses. That's kind of the litmus
6 test.

7 MR. CARSON: Okay. Now, I think you've
8 said in either your oral or your written testimony,
9 and maybe both, that in defining a class of works
10 for purposes of this rulemaking, we really can't
11 include in the definition the type of user who we're
12 thinking of. Is that accurate?

13 MR. METALITZ: Well, it certainly can't
14 be determined based on that. Such as the proposals
15 that it should be any type of work that is marketed
16 to libraries, for example.

17 MR. CARSON: Okay, fair enough. But
18 let's go back to an example I gave you a little
19 while ago. Let's say motion pictures on DVDs.
20 Assuming the case were made that there were a
21 problem there, would it be a legitimate class to
22 say, "We're not going to exempt motion pictures on
23 DVDs as such as a class. But we are going to exempt
24 motion pictures on DVDs when used by film school
25 professors."

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. METALITZ: I think that would be
2 very questionable under this scheme, because
3 Congress asked you to look at particular classes of
4 works. I would hesitate to say that you can't make
5 any reference to the type of use. But you have to
6 define a particular class of works. And Congress
7 did not exactly tell you how to do that. But it
8 certainly didn't tell you to define a particular
9 class of privileged users.

10 At one point it was going to do that.
11 Originally this rulemaking proceeding was to look at
12 whether 501(c)(3), (4) and (6) organizations and
13 people who had initial lawful access, and some other
14 specified categories of users were being adversely
15 impacted. That's not where this ended up.
16 It ended up with a definition of a particular class
17 of works.

18 MR. CARSON: Well, then, where we seem
19 to end up with your interpretation, having rejected
20 the interpretation in Subparagraph D that Rachel was
21 discussing with you, is that we have a very blunt
22 instrument indeed to use to deal with problems
23 caused by the anticircumvention provision.

24 We can't tailor the class to the
25 problem. We simply have to find that if there are

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 some users, maybe a minority of users of a work who
2 have serious problems with this particular kind of
3 work, we've got to exempt that class for everyone.
4 Does that make any sense at all?

5 MR. METALITZ: Well, I don't know that
6 your tool is quite that blunt. Because, again, I
7 think you have some flexibility in how you define a
8 particular class of work. But I think by directing
9 you to make a net determination to take into account
10 the positive aspects of the use of access control
11 measures, Congress did intend that there might be
12 some adverse impacts that would be counterbalanced
13 by positive impacts.

14 Even if there were some adverse impacts,
15 that wouldn't by itself justify finding a particular
16 class of works. You have to do a net calculation.
17 It's in the House Manager's Report and elsewhere.
18 It's a net calculation.

19 MR. CARSON: I don't think you addressed
20 it today, but certainly in your written comments you
21 spent some time talking about the DVD issue and so
22 on. This calls for a yes or no answer. Do you have
23 thoughts you might want to share with us on that
24 issue today?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. METALITZ: No, I think I'll leave
2 that to the experts that you're about to hear from.

3 MR. CARSON: All right. I was going to
4 ask, but I think you may have answered it. Whether
5 it makes sense to have you hang around for the Q and
6 A on the DVD issue. But am I hearing that you don't
7 think you can contribute anything beyond what --

8 MR. METALITZ: I'd be glad to. I'm at
9 your disposal.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay. That's all I have.

11 MS. PETERS: Okay. I don't have any
12 additional questions. Thank you very much, Mr.
13 Metalitz. And we'll now go to our last panel.

14 All right. As we go to our last panel
15 we're going to start with you, Ms. Gross. Thank
16 you.

17 MS. GROSS: Thank you. The Electronic
18 Frontier Foundation appreciates this opportunity to
19 testify regarding the adverse effects on the
20 prohibition against circumvention of technological
21 protections enacted by the DMCA.

22 DVD technology causes an adverse effect
23 on people's ability to make non-infringing uses of
24 copyrighted works, and should therefore be ruled
25 exempt from the DMCA's circumvention ban. The

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 licensing terms imposed on DVD technology prevent
2 player manufacturers from offering people the
3 ability to bypass the region codes. The same terms
4 prevent players from making non-infringing copies on
5 traditional VHS tapes or computer hard drives for
6 personal or educational use.

7 People who have attempted to eliminate
8 these restrictions by making competing DVD players
9 from legitimate reverse engineering, rather than by
10 signing a license, have been sued and enjoined under
11 the DMCA by major movie studios. The content
12 scrambling system, CSS, is deliberately designed to
13 prevent legitimate purchasers from being able to
14 view their own purchased movies.

15 The region coding scheme used by DVDs
16 prevents individual U.S. residents who purchase DVD
17 movies from anywhere else in the world from simply
18 viewing these movies on DVD players sold in the
19 United States. This diminishes the ability of these
20 individuals to use copyrighted works in ways that
21 are otherwise lawful.

22 In other words, the DMCA is being used
23 to prevent people from watching the movies they own
24 on the machines that they own.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The adverse effect impact on persons
2 outside the U.S. is even greater. A large fraction
3 of the world's movies are created by U.S. movie
4 studios in the U.S., and released first on DVD in
5 the U.S. At that time, persons anywhere in the
6 world are free to purchase these DVDs from U.S.
7 retailers or wholesalers.

8 However, when they arrive the CSS
9 technical protection measures prevent them from
10 playing. Months later, some of these movies are re-
11 released on DVDs coded for other regions. These re-
12 releases are sold at higher prices than the original
13 U.S. release, particularly in Europe. This delays
14 and diminishes the ability of the entire world's
15 population to use these copyrighted works in ways
16 that are otherwise lawful. DVDs using region
17 coding serve as a technological restraint on the
18 global trade in copyrighted movies. The leading UK
19 grocery chain, Tesco, started selling discount DVD
20 machines in February of 2000. By mid-February they
21 were selling tens of thousands of players from 400
22 stores, "once Internet sites and electrical
23 magazines showed customers how to change the player
24 to recognize discs from around the world."

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Tesco's press release mentions their
2 letter to Warner Home Video "Calling for an end to
3 the 'unnecessary practice' of zoning -- which uses
4 technology to prevent customers from buying DVD
5 discs from around the world to play on machines in
6 the UK. The letter goes on to say that Tesco
7 believes "This is against the spirit of free
8 competition and potentially a barrier to trade."
9 Their World Sourcing Director, Christine Cross,
10 said, "If we find a practice that we believe is
11 keeping prices high -- we'll fight to change it so
12 prices come down."

13 The licensing organization that controls
14 DVD technology, the DVD Copy Control Association,
15 has taken steps to exterminate this supply of
16 'region free' players. Its FAQ says, "In cases
17 where DVD-CCA learns of such products, immediate
18 action is taken through the manufacturer to have the
19 product corrected to conform with the CSS license."

20 Indeed, it enforced a contract term on
21 December 31, 1999 that eliminated its licensees'
22 ability to sell computer DVD drives whose region
23 controls were implemented in software.

24 Millions of users of DVD technology have been
25 adversely affected in their ability to make non-

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 infringing uses of copyrighted works. The 'region
2 coding' scheme prevents virtually every commercial
3 DVD from being playable in most regions of the
4 world, raising the prices and reducing the
5 availability of works to legitimate buyers. This
6 has an adverse effect on the ability of buyers to
7 simply view a work which they have purchased -- the
8 most non-infringing use possible.

9 CSS, together with the web of laws and
10 contracts around it also eliminate the individual's
11 ability to make non-infringing copies of DVD images.
12 Fritz Attaway, MPAA's Washington General Counsel,
13 declared under oath, "Under the terms of the CSS
14 license, such players may not enable the user to
15 make a digital copy of a DVD movie." The
16 restriction is imposed by contracts, implemented by
17 technology and enforced by DMCA lawsuits.

18 There is no balance to it. It does not
19 follow the boundaries of the copyright law.
20 Professors are unable to make excerpts to show their
21 classes. Parents are unable to make VHS copies for
22 their kids' VCRs. Programmers and artists are
23 unable to manipulate the images with their own
24 software. The CSS's blanket prohibition of copies
25 and excerpts throws the baby out with the bath

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 water. CSS prohibits all fair use copying, as well
2 as all illicit copying. It prohibits all copying.

3 Congress expressed its clear intent in
4 Section 1201(c)(1) of the DMCA by stating that
5 "Nothing in this section shall affect rights,
6 remedies, limitations or defenses to copyright
7 infringement, including fair use, under this title."

8 According to the DMCA's plain wording,
9 the traditional limitations to the copyright
10 holders' exclusive rights shall remain in the
11 digital realm. Congress' choice of the word "shall"
12 indicates in the intention is not permissive or
13 optional at the choice of the copyright holder. But
14 rather a mandatory requirement that balance and
15 longstanding traditional doctrines such as fair use
16 and the First Sale Rule continue to have meaning in
17 the digital paradigm.

18 There is no debate that Congress
19 intended balance in the DMCA and preservation of
20 traditional copyright principles in the digital
21 world. Congress recognized the inherent dangers in
22 enacting a circumvention ban and instructed this
23 body to anticipate adverse effects and rule
24 additional classes exempt from the general ban as a
25 remedy.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 As the U.S. Supreme Court has explained,
2 fair use serves as a First Amendment safety valve
3 within copyright law in Harper & Row, Publishers,
4 1985. Copyright law's fair use privilege fulfills
5 its constitutional purpose by allowing individuals
6 to copy works for socially important reasons without
7 the permission of the author.

8 Thus, granting perfect control to
9 copyright holders would be constitutionally
10 impermissible. This rulemaking is charged with
11 effectuating the DMCA in such a way that it does not
12 violate the spirit of the constitutional limitations
13 placed on copyright. To find otherwise would allow
14 the DMCA to swallow fair use in clear contradiction
15 to Congress' plain intent in Section 1201(c).

16 At a recent conference at Yale Law
17 School, the MPAA publicly stated that it was the
18 organization's position that an individual should be
19 required to obtain a license before making fair use
20 of a DVD. Clearly, this position cannot withstand
21 legal sanction.

22 It would be an abuse of intellectual
23 property law to allow the motion picture industry to
24 obtain all of the economic benefits of copyright
25 protection with none of the accompanying social

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 responsibilities. Technological protection systems
2 such as CSS that prevent the public from exercising
3 their legitimate rights abuse the copyright bargain
4 and should be exempt from the general circumvention
5 ban.

6 EFF is not spending millions of dollars
7 in court merely to exonerate one or two individuals,
8 or to enable distribution of a poorly-written
9 software prototype. We are here to establish the
10 principle that the anticircumvention provisions
11 cannot be used to eliminate fair use broadly
12 throughout society.

13 Nor can it be used to eliminate
14 competitors who would offer legitimate access and
15 copying capabilities to a major consumer market.
16 Several lawmakers verified congressional intent by
17 insisting that the DMCA does not and is not intended
18 to overrule the Betamax Supreme Court case.

19 Two years ago, there could have been
20 some doubt about whether the ill effects of the CSS
21 system were caused by the existence of the
22 prohibition against circumvention. Certainly the
23 movie studios spent a lot of energy lobbying for
24 these DMCA provisions, but the evidence was
25 circumstantial.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 This year it is clear. The movie
2 studios have made a clear and obvious causal
3 connection in their own briefs, tying their
4 motivation in building the CSS system to the
5 technological measures that restrict access to fair
6 use. And then tying those to the DMCA
7 anticircumvention statute.

8 The top eight movie studios, they
9 themselves declared in their initial briefs, "Each
10 of the Plaintiffs relied on the security provided by
11 CSS in manufacturing, producing and distributing to
12 the public copyrighted motion pictures in DVD
13 format...CSS is a technological measure that (a)
14 effectively controls access to works protected by
15 the Copyright Act, and (b) effectively protects
16 rights of copyright owners to control whether an
17 end-user can reproduce, manufacture, adapt, publicly
18 perform and/or distribute unauthorized copies of
19 their copyrighted works or portions thereof..."

20 Thus, the DMCA encourages technological
21 solutions in general by enforcing private parties'
22 use of technological protection measures with legal
23 sanctions for circumvention and for producing and
24 distributing products that are aimed at
25 circumventing protection measures like CSS.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 To be sure, technology provides
2 opportunity for benefit and abuse on behalf of all
3 parties to the copyright bargain. Individuals
4 engaging in piracy for commercial gain abuse
5 intellectual property and harm society and creators.
6 Likewise, the imposition of technology such as CSS
7 onto the public that prevents creative works from
8 readily passing into the public domain and restricts
9 people from exercising their fair use rights is
10 similarly abusive.

11 The use of such abusive systems that do
12 not uphold their end of the copyright bargain cannot
13 be backed up by force of law if copyright is to
14 continue to serve as the engine of free expression.

15 Contrary to the fears expressed by the
16 publishing industry, it is possible to preserve
17 constitutional values without destroying the value
18 behind creative expression. In its justification
19 for greater control over creative expression, the
20 industry claims the new-found phenomena of digital
21 technology leaves copyright holders at the mercy of
22 massive unchecked piracy.

23 While the industry has loudly overstated
24 any potential harm it might face resulting from
25 digital technology, it quietly looks the other way

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 without mentioning the unprecedented power
2 technology provides to copyright holders to control
3 access and use over creative expression.

4 The copyright industries' glaringly
5 self-interested suggestion that this committee
6 exempt nothing from the circumvention ban ignores
7 Congress' stated desire that DMCA not effect this
8 nation's core constitutional values.

9 It is crucial that this committee
10 consider the longer and societal view in deciding
11 these important issues. If you don't have the
12 ability to exercise your rights, then you don't have
13 rights.

14 There are greater issues at stake than
15 mere economic interests of a few corporations.
16 Unencumbered access to information is essential to
17 knowledge creation, innovation and the democratic
18 discourse of a free and healthy society. We must
19 diligently resist the content industry's push to
20 build a legal system that optimizes our children for
21 commercial consumption of creative expression at the
22 expense of their imagination, education and cultural
23 enrichment.

24 I'd like to address the unfounded fears
25 expressed by the content industry that any

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 additional exemptions would violate U.S.' WIPO
2 Treaty obligations. Article 11 of the WIPO
3 Copyright Treaty provides that, "Contracting parties
4 shall provide adequate legal protection and
5 effective legal remedies against the circumvention
6 of effective technological measures that are used by
7 authors in connection with the exercise of their
8 rights under this Treaty or the Berne Convention and
9 that restrict acts, in respect of their works, which
10 are not authorized by the authors concerned or
11 permitted by law."

12 The DMCA went well beyond what was
13 agreed to among contracting parties to the Treaty by
14 granting an additional and completely separate
15 access right. Thus, any additional exemptions under
16 that right would have no effect on U.S. treaty
17 obligations under WIPO. Additionally, the plain
18 language of the Treaty permits circumvention for
19 fair use.

20 The Copyright Office should define an
21 exempted class as DVD movies. The movie studios
22 stated in court filings that over one million copies
23 of such works are sold every week. This is the
24 class of works currently showing adverse effects.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 It would be disingenuous to designate a
2 class such as DVD movies protected by a region
3 coding system. Since consumers have flocked to
4 hardware and software devices whose region codes can
5 be disabled, and manufacturers are starting to
6 rebel, the movie studios might decide to "throw
7 region coding overboard" in order to save the rest
8 of their restrictive scheme.

9 A designation that only applied to CSS
10 works with region coding would still enable them to
11 suppress competitors whose equipment provides fair
12 use copying.

13 Similarly, the industry could evade a
14 ruling against a class such as DVDs protected by CSS
15 by merely switching to a different but equally
16 restrictive protection system. An improved CSS-2
17 system already exists, and the industry is actively
18 designing stronger ones.

19 Therefore, the entire class of DVD
20 movies is threatened with adverse effects now, and
21 in the next three years, and should be exempted from
22 the anticircumvention provisions of the DMCA.

23 The movie studios stated in court
24 filings in January that about 4,000 movie titles
25 have been released in the U.S. on DVD, that over

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 five million DVD players have been sold, and that
2 over 1 million copies of such works are sold every
3 week. This is not an issue of "individual cases,"
4 but a broadly implemented system that impacts all
5 segments of society.

6 A deliberately-designed inability to play the work
7 you purchased is no mere inconvenience.

8 In the comments and testimony provided
9 by the content industry before this proceeding, the
10 charge continues to surface that no one has supplied
11 any evidence of actual harm resulting from the use
12 of such dangerous protection systems we discuss
13 today. I need not remind the committee of the
14 hundreds of individuals who submitted comments
15 complaining about their inability to view or simply
16 make fair use of DVDs. Additionally, in
17 testimony before this committee, CCUM described a
18 teaching method using DVD that has become
19 unavailable to educators.

20 It is imperative that this proceeding
21 recognize that the public's sheer inability to
22 exercise its legal right with respect to certain
23 types of works because technological protections
24 have been applied, is by its mere existence, a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 substantial harm perpetrated against the First
2 Amendment.

3 As the U.S. Supreme Court stated in
4 Elrod v. Burns, "The loss of First Amendment
5 freedoms, even for minimal periods of times
6 unquestionably constitutes irreparable injury." I
7 encourage the Librarian to weigh the constitutional
8 considerations into its determination about the
9 societal harm.

10 Copyright's goal is to create a world
11 full of creators with a rich and thriving public
12 domain where creativity flourishes. In addition to
13 legal protection designed to enable a market for
14 works, creators vitally rely upon ready access to
15 information, including a vibrant public domain and
16 the ability to engage in a wide range of legitimate
17 uses including fair use. If copyright is to achieve
18 its objective, society's true creators must continue
19 to be allowed to build upon the works of their
20 ancestors.

21 Because of the demonstrated widespread
22 adverse impact on non-infringing use and fair use
23 imposed by their technological restrictions, DVD
24 movies should be exempt from Section 1201. Thank
25 you.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. PETERS: Thank you, Ms. Gross. Mr.
2 Marks?

3 MR. MARKS: Thank you. First I'd like
4 to thank you for the opportunity to testify at this
5 important hearing. My name is Dean Marks and I am
6 Senior Counsel, Intellectual Property, for Time
7 Warner. I appear here today on behalf of Time
8 Warner and the Motion Picture Association of
9 America. I would like to make a few general
10 statements, and then discuss in a bit more detail
11 the issue of DVD and the CSS protection technology.

12 As a preliminary matter, much has been
13 written and said in the context of this inquiry that
14 seems to pit content owners against consumers over
15 the fair use issue. My company and fellow content
16 providers not only support the fair use doctrine,
17 but we rely on it every day.

18 In creating and publishing our movies or
19 music, we frequently rely on the protections that
20 fair use provides, for example, to comment or to
21 parody.

22 From what I have read and heard during
23 the course of this inquiry, no concrete evidence has
24 been adduced that any user has been prevented from

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 making non-infringing uses of a work due to the
2 presence of technological protection measures.

3 Discomfort has been expressed by some
4 librarians over the terms of certain content
5 licenses, but this is an issue separate and apart
6 from whether exceptions to the legal protection of
7 technical measures should be adopted.

8 Moreover, the potential harms that have
9 been described are hypothetical and speculative.
10 Contrast this with the very real evidence of threats
11 to the rights of copyright owners that arise in
12 today's digital and Internet environments.

13 On May 10, the New York Times published
14 an article entitled "The Concept of Copyright Fights
15 for Internet Survival." The article describes
16 several new software programs, most notably Freenet,
17 that have been developed and are used to deprive
18 copyright owners of the ability to exercise their
19 rights in the distribution of their works.

20 As stated in the article, the developers
21 of such programs "express the hope that the clash
22 over copyright enforcement in cyberspace will
23 produce a world in which all information is freely
24 shared." It is that sort of threat that content

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 owners worry about when we speak about the copyright
2 balance today.

3 These very real threats to the rights of
4 copyright owners led not only the U.S. Congress, but
5 also the world community in the WIPO treaties to
6 determine that technical protection measures used by
7 copyright owners must be entitled to legal
8 protection against circumvention.

9 In considering the possibility of any
10 exception to the Section 1201(a) prohibition, the
11 Register of Copyrights and the Librarian of Congress
12 must weigh the lack of evidence of harm to non-
13 infringing uses with the substantial evidence of
14 harm to copyright owners that will result from the
15 weakening of the legal protections afforded to
16 technical measures.

17 Furthermore, there's an underlying
18 assumption of many -- not all, but many of the
19 remarks made in the course of this inquiry is that
20 technological protection measures will be used to
21 "take" works away from users, or to deny access. I
22 strongly believe that this assumption is
23 fundamentally flawed.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Technological protection measures can actually
2 facilitate the making of works available to
3 consumers.

4 We've heard discussions of DVD. DVD is
5 a concrete example of this proposition. My company
6 would not have released its motion pictures on the
7 DVD format if DVD did not incorporate technological
8 protection measures. The risk of unauthorized
9 reproduction and distribution of our content in the
10 digital format without protection would simply be
11 too great. Without the content scramble system
12 there simply would not be DVDs in the market today.

13 The DVD format has permitted users to
14 view and own copies of motion pictures in a new and
15 desirable digital format. This is why DVD has
16 become so popular. Why, in fact, are a million DVDs
17 sold each week? Because it's a popular and
18 consumer-friendly format.

19 Further, DVD has allowed users for the
20 first time to play high quality copies of motion
21 pictures on their personal computers. These new
22 uses of motion picture content have been made
23 economically possible due to the development and
24 implementation of technical measures, including
25 access controls.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 To now argue that these technological
2 protection measures should be subject to
3 circumvention because DVDs may not be playable on
4 all personal computers misses the point that if the
5 integrity of technological protection measures are
6 not legally protected, content owners will be
7 reluctant to make their works available in these new
8 formats in the first place.

9 A clear real-life example is DVD-Audio.
10 Due to the recent compromise of CSS and the fact
11 that technological protection for DVD-Audio had been
12 developed and premised on CSS, music companies have
13 delayed indefinitely the launch of the DVD-Audio
14 format. The result is that consumers have been
15 deprived of a new music format.

16 Thus, circumvention of technical
17 measures, whether sanctioned through this process or
18 accomplished in violation of law, can seriously
19 diminish the general public benefit.

20 I would like to turn and pick up on a
21 point made earlier today by Frederick Weingarten. I
22 agree with Mr. Weingarten that the development and
23 implementation of technological protection measures
24 can be a win/win situation for both content owners
25 and users.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 For example, technological protection
2 measures are under development that would permit
3 users to make a copy of certain pay television
4 programs that are otherwise protected by encryption
5 and other technical measures. In the context of the
6 copy protection work underway in the Secure Digital
7 Music Initiative, all participating parties have
8 agreed that consumers who purchase music protected
9 by technical measures should be able to engage in
10 certain levels of copying for private use.

11 Thus, the development and implementation
12 of technical measures that inhibit massive
13 unauthorized copying and distribution, but permit
14 limited consumer copying opportunities, will
15 actually facilitate the making available of works to
16 more consumers in more formats, and their ability to
17 make non-infringing uses.

18 These technologies may also make it
19 easier for content owners to make their works
20 available to libraries in digital format, and, in
21 turn, for libraries to make these works available to
22 their users without undue risk of economic harm to
23 the owners due to unauthorized reproduction,
24 transmission and re-distribution.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The development and implementation of
2 technical measures is in its infancy in the digital
3 world, particularly with respect to the Internet.
4 We should give some breathing room for the measures
5 to be developed and implemented before we seek to
6 undercut their legal protection.

7 It has been mentioned by prior
8 witnesses, including Paul Hughes from Adobe this
9 morning, and Bernard Sorkin from Time Warner at the
10 Washington hearing, that content providers must be
11 mindful of the desires of consumers. We are in the
12 business of selling our content to the public, and
13 we cannot survive as an industry if we do not widely
14 distribute our works to consumers.

15 Because of this imperative, it is highly
16 unlikely that we will employ technical measures that
17 will be seriously detrimental to the ability of our
18 consumers to make non-infringing uses. But this is
19 only part of the answer, and you don't need to
20 simply trust us.

21 As a practical matter, content owners
22 cannot unilaterally develop and implement technical
23 measures of their own choosing. Why is this? Well,
24 sound recordings and audio/visual works can only be
25 enjoyed by the use of receiving and playback devices

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 such as television sets, CD or record players,
2 videocassette players, personal computers, et
3 cetera.

4 Therefore, we as content owners cannot
5 simply apply technical measures to our works that
6 will cause all receiving and playback devices to be
7 unable to play our works. If we were to do this, we
8 would quickly be out of business.

9 Equally important, however, the goal of
10 protecting works cannot be achieved if receiving,
11 playback and recording devices do not recognize and
12 respond to the technical measures that we seek to
13 incorporate in our works, but they simply ignore
14 them.

15 So, to work properly, copy protection
16 technologies must be bilateral. The technologies
17 applied by content owners need to function with
18 consumer electronics and computer devices. This
19 bilateral requirement means that protection measures
20 are not simply a matter of technological innovation.
21 And they are not simply a matter of fulfilling a
22 list of demands by content owners.

23 Rather, copy protection technologies
24 such as the CSS system for DVD require a high level
25 of consensus among the content industry and the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 consumer electronics industry and computer industry.
2 This consensus requirement means that access control
3 and copy protection structures, and the use of
4 technical measures, are heavily negotiated across
5 industries.
6 And, indeed, the negotiations over the CSS system
7 spanned at least two years and possibly longer than
8 that.

9 Because the consumer electronics and
10 computer industries have strong vested interests in
11 ensuring that their devices permit users wide
12 latitude to use copyrighted works, the copy
13 protection structures and technologies that are, in
14 fact, being developed and implemented in the area of
15 audio/visual and musical works fully recognize user
16 concerns.

17 Finally, this inquiry is not a one-shot
18 deal. At the moment it seems clear that there has
19 been no evidence presented of any adverse effect,
20 and hence it seems premature for any exceptions to
21 Section 1201(a) to be enacted. The fears expressed
22 that the DMCA and the anticircumvention provisions
23 will harm users or the fair use doctrine have not
24 materialized, and indeed these fears may never come
25 to pass.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 If any of the "parade of horrors" that
2 have been described by some of the witnesses
3 materialize in the future, then the Register and the
4 Librarian will have the opportunity to consider
5 appropriate remedies in future rulemaking
6 procedures. At the moment, frankly, this exercise
7 appears to be a case of attempting to devise a
8 solution in search of a problem.

9 I now want to turn specifically to the
10 case of DVD and CSS. In several of the comments
11 received by the Copyright Office, reference was made
12 to DVDs and the alleged inability of users of the
13 Linux operating system to play DVDs on their
14 computers.

15 Much confusion, I would even say
16 misconception and misinformation, surrounds the
17 issue of DVD, CSS and Linux. First, there is no
18 legal or technical barrier to building an open
19 source interface between the Linux operating system
20 and a CSS compliant application that will play DVDs
21 encrypted with CSS on the Linux system.

22 Second, the CSS technology and
23 manufacturer's license necessary to build any CSS
24 compliant application or device is available on a
25 non-discriminatory basis. The current license

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 requires a one-time fee of \$10,000. It is expected
2 in the future that an annual fee of \$5,000 will also
3 be assessed. These payments are administrative
4 fees, the license itself is royalty free.

5 None of the technical or legal
6 conditions of the CSS license prevent implementation
7 in the Linux environment. And indeed, two CSS
8 licensees have in fact developed CSS implementations
9 for the Linux operating system. One, called Sigma
10 Systems, is hardware-based and another -- whose name
11 I unfortunately don't have with me -- is software-
12 based. But both of these implementations are
13 available on the market.

14 It is true that most software
15 applications that permit the playback of DVDs are
16 designed for the Windows operating system. But this
17 is simply because of market-driven decisions on the
18 part of software developers who seek to develop and
19 sell applications for the prevailing operating
20 system.

21 Neither movie studios nor the licensors
22 of the CSS technology have sought to prevent the
23 development of the applications in any other
24 platforms, including Linux. Indeed, much to the
25 contrary, the film studios have a strong interest in

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the development of as many CSS licensed and
2 compliant playback devices as possible, be they
3 consumer electronic players, DVD drives for
4 computers, software programs or other platforms,
5 such as the recently introduced Sony PlayStation 2.
6 The greater the number and variety of CSS compliant
7 playback devices available in the market, the
8 greater the demand will be, hopefully, for DVDs that
9 carry our content.

10 Some consumers who have been unable to
11 play DVDs on their Linux operating system have
12 argued that they should be permitted to circumvent
13 the CSS encryption technology in order to gain
14 access to the content of the DVDs that they have
15 purchased. I want to make clear from the outset
16 that my discussion of that particular argument in
17 this hearing is separate from the ongoing litigation
18 in the Reimerdes case, commonly known as the DeCSS
19 case.

20 That case involves violations of Section
21 1201(a)(2) -- the prohibitions concerning
22 circumvention devices, products or services and
23 therefore that case is not directly relevant to the
24 issue at hand in this hearing, namely Section
25 1201(a)(1) and the prohibition on circumvention

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 conduct. Because the Reimerdes litigation is
2 ongoing and because my company is a Plaintiff in
3 that litigation, and because understand that I have
4 recently been noticed for a deposition in that
5 litigation, it is inappropriate for me to discuss
6 that case.

7 With respect to the argument for an
8 exemption on the prohibition of circumvention
9 conduct for purposes of playing DVD discs on the
10 Linux platform, I respond as follows:

11 First, as the number of Linux users
12 grows, the market will naturally fill the demand for
13 CSS compliant applications that will play DVDs on
14 Linux. As mentioned above, two companies already
15 offer DVD playback applications for the Linux
16 operating system. Hence, adoption of a
17 circumvention exemption is neither justified nor
18 necessary.

19 Second, a consumer who purchases a copy
20 of a work but does not have the proper equipment to
21 play back the work does not, in my view, entitle the
22 consumer to circumvent access control protection
23 measures.

24 I want to take an example here. A
25 consumer who purchased a subscription to HBO -- Home

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Box Office pay television service -- soon after its
2 launch, but did not own, the consumer did not own a
3 television set that could accommodate a cable set
4 top box necessary to descramble the encrypted HBO
5 signal, would not have been entitled to circumvent
6 the encryption on the HBO signal. That is, he would
7 have not been entitled, as a legal matter.

8 Encryption television signals are
9 protected by various sections of the Communications
10 Act. None of these sections provide for exceptions
11 for users to decrypt signals without the
12 authorization of the broadcaster. We have all been
13 living with this legal regime for more than a decade
14 with no difficulties, legal or otherwise.

15 Mindful of this longstanding precedent
16 in the realm of encrypted broadcasts, no exemption
17 to the prohibition of circumvention of access
18 control technology appears justified merely to
19 accommodate users who lack playback equipment that
20 is readily available in the market.

21 Third, copyright owners are applying
22 technical protection measures today, not simply to
23 ensure proper payment for access to a work, but also
24 to manage the exponentially increasing risks of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 subsequent unauthorized reproduction and re-
2 distribution posed by the digital environment.

3 The danger of permitting circumvention
4 to facilitate an individual's access to a work is
5 that such circumvention will also likely undermine
6 protections against unauthorized copying and
7 transmission, such as Internet retransmission.
8 Once circumvention is permitted, there is no
9 practical manner -- and likely no technical way --
10 to ensure that subsequent uses of the work will be
11 non-infringing.

12 For example, if circumvention of CSS
13 were allowed solely to permit access to content on
14 DVDs to Linux users for home viewing, such
15 circumvention would likely involve a copy of the
16 content being made in the hard drive of the Linux
17 user's computer. Once a copy is readily available
18 in the hard drive, it is easily subject to massive
19 replication and distribution for unlimited purposes.

20 Such risks are not speculative.
21 Napster, iCrave, Gnutella, MyMP3 and Freenet all
22 stand as very real examples of the ease with which
23 works protected by copyright are subject to enormous
24 unauthorized copying and redistribution once such
25 works reside on the hard drive of a computer.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 These very real risks militate against
2 allowing exceptions to the prohibition on
3 circumvention conduct. If any cases of adverse
4 impact on non-infringing uses of works are
5 demonstrated in the future, then that would be the
6 time to discuss alternative remedies. An exception
7 to the prohibition on circumvention conduct should
8 be considered only as a remedy of last resort.
9 Thank you.

10 I also wanted to express my response
11 concerning regional coding. But I can do that now,
12 or wait for the question period, if you would like.
13 Better to do it now?

14 There's been some discussion of the
15 regional coding issues, and how regional coding is
16 used or misused by content providers to prevent
17 users around the world from playing DVDs. For
18 example, a DVD disc, a Region 1 disc that might be
19 purchased in the U.S. And I want to make a few
20 remarks about that.

21 First of all, consumer electronics
22 audiovisual equipment has been developed with a
23 certain degree of regionalization. There are
24 different formats in different countries of the
25 world. The U.S. is NTSC format, Europe is PAL

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 format. If someone were to buy a videocassette that
2 had been manufactured -- straight old analog
3 videocassette that had been manufactured in the
4 U.S., it would be in the NTSC format.

5 That videocassette would not be playable
6 in Europe on PAL format televisions and
7 videocassette players. This situation has existed
8 since the introduction of video in the early or mid-
9 80s with no complaint. So I find it a bit
10 interesting that now this issue of regional coding
11 has become such a hot button for certain
12 communities.

13 Second, why do movie studios impose
14 regional coding in the first place? It has to do
15 with the way the economics of the film business
16 work. Films are very, very expensive to produce,
17 and they become increasingly expensive to produce as
18 the years go by. Many people assume that the
19 revenues from theatrical distribution are the main
20 source of economic return from movie production.
21 That, in fact, is not the case.

22 As of today, the receipts from
23 theatrical distribution usually, on average, account
24 for only 20 to 25 percent of the gross revenues
25 earned by a motion picture. The balance of those

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 revenues are earned by what have typically been
2 referred to as ancillary markets. But now they are,
3 frankly, primary markets because they account for
4 the lion's share of the revenue.

5 These markets include home video, pay-
6 per-view television, pay television and over the air
7 free broadcast. The reason why movie studios are
8 concerned about regional coding is that it is very,
9 very expensive to produce theatrical prints. And
10 therefore, unlike the music business, which
11 currently tends to release new works on a worldwide
12 basis -- the new Madonna CD tends to be released all
13 over the world on the same date -- it is not really
14 economically practicable for movie studios to do so,
15 due to the enormous costs of producing prints, and
16 the costs involved in dubbing or translating of the
17 prints.

18 Added onto that are just regional habits
19 that we try to take account of. Summer is a big
20 movie-going season in the United States. Summer is
21 a very low season for movie-going in Mediterranean
22 countries, particularly Italy, where even today a
23 lot of the cinemas are not air-conditioned.

24 So therefore if we have a blockbuster
25 that we want to release in the summer in the United

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 States, we don't necessarily want to release it in
2 the summer in Italy. The importance of having to
3 exploit the different windows of exploitation of
4 theatrical, video, pay-per-view, pay, free broadcast
5 means that we are concerned that if we released
6 region-free DVDs in the United States six months
7 after theatrical release in the United States, and
8 those DVDs were widely available in Italy where the
9 movie had not even been theatrically released, that
10 the impact would be to cannibalize the theatrical
11 release. And take away from the potential economic
12 return of the theatrical release.

13 I wanted to lay this out, as part of the
14 explanation as to why we use regional coding in the
15 DVD system.

16 Finally, I just wanted to turn to some
17 of the fair use and First Amendment questions. It
18 seemed to me that uses described by Ms. Gross were,
19 in large part, not the typical fair uses for
20 education or comment, criticism, parody, but were
21 consumptive uses. Making copies for other people,
22 or copies for your children.

23 I don't understand how protecting
24 expressive works from piracy with the use of
25 technological measures adversely affects free

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 expression, dissemination of knowledge or creation.
2 The wider dissemination of works, in fact, that
3 technological protection measures can afford, in my
4 view, furthers the goal of spreading culture and
5 knowledge.

6 The fact that one million DVD movies are
7 sold each week indicates that these works are
8 getting into the hands of users at a tremendous
9 rate. And not that users are somehow being denied
10 or deprived of access or to the works. If DVDs were
11 not readily playable, it is difficult to understand
12 how millions and millions of DVDs could be sold.

13 Similarly, I fail to see how the CSS
14 system deprives any individual of his or her First
15 Amendment rights. And I look forward to answering
16 your questions. Thank you very much.

17 MS. PETERS: Thank you, Mr. Marks. Mr.
18 Riley?

19 MR. RUSSELL: Russell.

20 MS. PETERS: Russell, excuse me.

21 MR. RUSSELL: I'd like to introduce
22 myself. My name is Riley Russell. I am the Vice
23 President of Legal Affairs at Sony Computer
24 Entertainment America. I am also accompanied by Mr.
25 Morton David Goldberg, of Cowan, Liebowitz & Latman.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I think it's worth, very briefly -- as I
2 look around the room and I don't see any 15-year-
3 olds -- at least to describe very quickly what the
4 PlayStation is. And that is a video game device
5 that, of course, plays video games.

6 Along with the Sony PlayStation, Sony
7 Computer Entertainment markets and sells over 50
8 video game products and other services. Along with
9 that there are over 350 independent video game
10 publishers or developers licensed by SCEA who
11 produce approximately 300 games a year for the Sony
12 PlayStation system. The independent developers
13 employ in excess of 6,000 people, most of them in
14 the United States.

15 I would like to thank the Copyright
16 Office for the opportunity to testify in this
17 rulemaking proceeding, which deals with what I
18 believe is a critical issue to the copyright
19 industries and their customers in the digital age.
20 This rulemaking poses the narrow question of whether
21 there are particular classes of copyrighted works
22 whose users have been, or in the next three years
23 are likely to be substantially adversely affected in
24 their ability to make non-infringing use of the
25 works if the class is not exempted from the scope of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Section 1201(a)(1)(A). The rulemaking is to focus
2 on distinct, verifiable and measurable impacts;
3 speculation, de minimis effects and mere
4 inconvenience should be disregarded in this inquiry.

5 As you are aware, Congress intended that
6 the burden of persuasion as to the necessity of any
7 exemption fall squarely upon the advocates.
8 Congress, furthermore, had no expectation that in
9 this proceeding the conditions for any exemption
10 necessarily would be found to exist. They, in fact,
11 may not.

12 To the contrary, according to the House
13 Manager's Report, the absence of any such finding
14 would indicate that "the digital information
15 marketplace is developing in the manner which is
16 most likely to occur, with the availability of
17 copyrighted materials for lawful uses being
18 enhanced, not diminished, by the implementation of
19 technological measures and the establishment of
20 carefully targeted legal prohibitions against acts
21 of circumvention." I submit to you that this is
22 exactly what's happened.

23 As a benchmark, Congress described the
24 hypothetical scenario under which it "could be
25 appropriate" to modify Section 1201(a)(1)(A)'s flat

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 prohibition of the circumventing of technological
2 access controls: one in which the use of
3 technological access controls might result in less,
4 rather than more, access to copyrighted materials
5 because of a confluence of factors including the
6 adoption of business models to restrict, rather than
7 maximize, distribution and availability. It goes
8 without saying that nothing remotely resembling such
9 a scenario has been shown to exist today, or to be
10 likely to arise in the next three years. In fact,
11 experience has shown otherwise.

12 It is telling that, despite the sound
13 and fury raised in many submissions, few of the
14 advocates of exemptions responded straightforwardly
15 to the questions posed in the statute itself and in
16 the Notice of Inquiry. A number of respondents
17 would have the Copyright Office overturn or subvert
18 the DMCA itself. Others concerned themselves with
19 issues beyond the scope of this inquiry, such as the
20 DeCSS litigation, or issues unripe for examination,
21 such as preservation of works in a digital format.

22 In short, Section 1201(a)(1)'s opponents
23 -- and they're opponents of the statute as Congress
24 enacted it -- have not identified either distinct,
25 verifiable and measurable impacts -- actual or

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 prospective -- on lawful use of copyrighted works
2 caused by the prohibition on circumvention, or a
3 class of works -- i.e., a "narrow and focused subset
4 of the broad categories of works of
5 authorship...identified in Section 102 of the
6 Copyright Act," which is subject to such an impact.
7 Accordingly, the advocates of exemption have not
8 sustained their burden, and Section 1201(a)(1)
9 should come into effect intact.

10 The backdrop for and impetus behind the
11 law under discussion here is, of course, the vastly
12 altered environment in which copyright owners have
13 been operating since the advent of digital media and
14 the Internet. In this brave new digital, networked
15 world, the traditional arrangements among copyright
16 owners, copyrighted works, and the consumers of
17 those works have already been radically transformed
18 by a single unprecedented fact: every consumer,
19 with a single touch of a button, is now potentially
20 a global distributor -- or a receiver -- of an
21 unlimited number of perfect copies of any
22 copyrighted work which may come into his or her
23 possession in digital form. Once distributed, these
24 copies can no longer be retrieved.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Much has been said of the importance of
2 maintaining the traditional balance between the
3 copyright holders' rights and consumers' privileges.
4 The WIPO and Congress have acknowledged that
5 technological access control measures, backed up by
6 laws prohibiting circumvention, are essential to
7 doing just that.

8 As Congress implicitly recognized, and
9 as it should be clear to any observer, it would be
10 derelict for content owners to release their works
11 in digital form into this new environment without
12 availing themselves of every practical means of
13 protecting those works from unauthorized access.

14 Congress, we recall, mandated that this
15 proceeding consider the positive effects of these
16 technological measures on the availability of
17 copyrighted materials. For SCEA and, we believe,
18 many other copyright holders large or small, the
19 availability of effective access control measures
20 has had far more than a mere "positive effect" on
21 the ability to make digital works available.

22 In fact, the availability of technical
23 measures offers to the copyright holders means and
24 scopes of distribution which were unimaginable just
25 a few short years ago. For all of us, however,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 effective access control will be a precondition to
2 the wide dissemination of commercial copyrighted
3 works in digital form.

4 While SCEA and other content owners
5 clearly need the protection of access control
6 technology in order to release works in digital
7 form, it is equally clear that technology alone is
8 not enough. There is not, and there never will be,
9 such a thing as an un-hackable access control
10 technology. At least not one that functions
11 appropriately in the marketplace.

12 As WIPO and Congress recognized, in
13 order for access control technology to work
14 practically in the marketplace for copyright owners
15 and consumers, it must be supported by laws
16 prohibiting its circumvention. Otherwise the
17 copyright holder is no better off than if the work
18 was distributed without the access control. Such a
19 tradeoff would result in a far narrower distribution
20 for most works than currently exist.

21 The WIPO's Copyright Treaty, like
22 Section 1201, refers to "effective technological
23 measures that are used by authors in connection with
24 the exercise of their rights." Some contend that
25 once the initial access to a copy of a work has been

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 made, the prohibition on circumvention should no
2 longer apply -- that the law should protect only a
3 single "gatekeeper" function for an access control
4 measure, after which it may be circumvented with
5 impunity. There is nothing to suggest, however,
6 that Congress and the WIPO intended such a result,
7 and the notion makes little sense.

8 Here I speak not only for SCEA, but I
9 believe for all copyright holders who deserve the
10 benefit of protection technologies. It is perhaps
11 the author of modest means, the small publisher, who
12 may well be best benefitted by these technologies.
13 He or she may have no other means of enforcing his
14 or her copyrights in the digital world, and
15 therefore it is the smaller copyright owners who
16 require the extra security afforded by strong access
17 controls.

18 Of course, under copyright law benefit
19 to the consumer is an ultimate interest. To date,
20 the consuming public has benefitted immensely from
21 copyright owners' use of technological access
22 controls which have been instrumental in permitting
23 dissemination in digital form of enormous numbers of
24 works which would otherwise not be available today.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 It's worth pointing out that SCEA, like
2 most of the copyright holders that you've heard
3 from, earns its keep by getting its works into the
4 hands and ears and before the eyes of its paying
5 customers.

6 This fundamental characteristic of our
7 business, and all our businesses, assures that for
8 the foreseeable future the benefits of access
9 control technologies, in the form of enhanced
10 availability of copyrighted works, will continue to
11 flow to the public. The prospect has been raised
12 that this most basic business model could someday be
13 replaced by one based on restriction rather than
14 dissemination.

15 SCEA, however, sees no such change on
16 the horizon, and continues to have a strong
17 incentive not to risk alienating its customers with
18 unreasonable or unwieldy restrictions on the use of
19 SCEA's copyrighted works.

20 In my industry, we survive on a plug-
21 and-play mentality. We succeed by satisfying the
22 consumer with what they want. Access control
23 measures which include encryption and regional
24 coding are essential tools in maintaining the high
25 quality of our copyrighted works, and in controlling

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the nature and quality of the goods and services
2 that bear our trademarks.

3 Effective access control measures are of
4 great utility in our ongoing campaign against
5 counterfeiting and other pirated works with respect
6 to our products. As such, they allow us to adopt
7 technologies that help to keep down the price -- and
8 therefore increase the availability -- of our
9 products that purchasers of lawful copies, who
10 ultimately must bear some of the costs of
11 infringement.

12 Access control measures also help
13 protect the consumer's interest, as well as our
14 reputation and good will, by ensuring that
15 legitimately produced PlayStation video games are
16 distributed only in those areas of the world where
17 they are properly licensed.

18 PlayStation games, like products in many
19 other industries, are produced in multiple versions
20 tailored, in terms of language and other features,
21 for use by consumers in particular markets.
22 Distribution of these games in other, unauthorized
23 markets will inevitably produce dissatisfied
24 customers and distributors.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The benefits to consumers will continue
2 if the anticircumvention provision is allowed to
3 come into effect unimpaired.

4 As the House Manager's Report pointed
5 out, the technological measures protected by Section
6 1201(a) can be deployed to support new ways of
7 disseminating copyrighted materials to users.

8 Access control technologies enable
9 copyright owners to offer consumers a wider array of
10 options tailored more closely to individual needs,
11 giving each consumer better value, as well as
12 allowing more consumers to access a given work. The
13 importance of such flexibility can be illustrated by
14 an example from today's marketplace.

15 We all know that consumers currently
16 have the option of purchasing a popular video game,
17 thereby acquiring the right to an unlimited number
18 of private performances. They have the right to
19 dispose of their copy in the marketplace.

20 While a certain number take advantage of this
21 option, millions more choose instead to spend what
22 is considerably a more modest sum by purchasing a
23 narrower set of privileges. By renting the game for
24 a night or two at their local Blockbuster, or paying

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 for a single performance, for example, in a hotel
2 room.

3 We also offer promotional discs that are
4 distributed, often free or for a small fee, that
5 sometimes give limited access to the players to try
6 the game before they actually purchase it. All this
7 is available to us because of our ability to control
8 access.

9 If the consumer likes the game enough,
10 he or she may find it worthwhile to purchase a copy
11 outright rather than repeatedly either rent copies
12 or pay for views. In many cases the single viewing
13 or rental suits the customer's needs perfectly and
14 they're happy. And if the consumer doesn't
15 particularly like it, at least the consumer only
16 spent a small sum rather than the cost of the entire
17 game.

18 What is important is that this variety
19 of options enables many more consumers to avail
20 themselves of our work than if only one option were
21 to exist in the marketplace. It is only through the
22 application of these effective technological access
23 controls that this kind of flexibility can be made
24 available in the digital environment, where perfect

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 copies can be made and circulated around the world
2 almost instantaneously.

3 Those in this proceeding who have urged
4 you to make broad blanket exemptions would thwart
5 the creation of flexible digital-age business
6 models for making works available to consumers.
7 Without effective controls -- that is, technology
8 reinforced with a legal prohibition of circumvention
9 -- consumers of digital works will in many ways be
10 left with fewer, more expensive options, most of
11 which are less desirable.

12 Proposals for exemptions that were
13 responsive to the clear parameters the Office set
14 out in the Notice of Inquiry have been conspicuously
15 absent in these hearings. Of course, those who have
16 advocated the crafting of broad and ill-defined
17 exemptions based on classes of users or uses, rather
18 than of works, are asking the Office to do something
19 not within the Office's powers.

20 Since the number and variety of works
21 which would fall outside 1201(a)(1)(A) under such
22 exceptions is potentially infinite, these advocates
23 are in effect asking that the statute be overturned.
24 Even if properly delineated "narrow and focused"
25 classes of works had been proposed for exemption, we

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 would remain concerned that in practice any
2 exemption would spill over to encompass the entire
3 Section 102 "category of works" within which the
4 "class of works" fell.

5 I would like to emphasize that SCEA, as
6 a responsible member of the copyright community, is
7 interested in the vitality of the fair use doctrine.
8 Clearly, however, and contrary to the assertions of
9 certain educators and librarians in this proceeding,
10 the fair use defense simply cannot serve as the
11 basis for delineating a "class of works" that might
12 properly be the subject of an exemption to be
13 recommended in this proceeding.

14 Fair use is a defense to infringement,
15 whose applicability is determined through a fact-
16 intensive inquiry undertaken on a case by case
17 basis. Fair use, in appropriate circumstances, may
18 be made of many, many copyrighted works. To declare
19 in advance that any work of which fair use might be
20 made is within a class of works exempt from the
21 statutory prohibition on circumvention would render
22 the entire provision a nullity -- which may be the
23 objective of the advocates of "Fair Use Works" as an
24 exempt class.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 It appears, furthermore, that to anoint
2 a huge number of works, wholesale, as "fair use
3 works" would be incompatible with fair use itself,
4 as an equitable defense and an equitable rule of
5 reason. In addition, it would contravene Section
6 1201(c), which mandates that nothing in Section 1201
7 is to affect either copyright rights or "defenses to
8 infringement, including fair use."

9 Contentions aside, there has been no
10 showing that 1201(a)(1)(A) has had a negative impact
11 on the availability of the fair use defense, or that
12 any impact is likely in the next three years. The
13 same is true of the first sale doctrine, as to which
14 some commentators has voiced concern.

15 The first sale doctrine is, of course,
16 the product of a world in which copyrighted content
17 was overwhelmingly distributed via sale of tangible
18 copies. Even in that world, however, there are
19 categories of copyrighted works such as broadcast
20 television programming to which the first sale
21 doctrine have little or no application.

22 In point of fact, notwithstanding these
23 ill-defined fears for the future of the first sale
24 doctrine, technological access control measures to
25 date have had little discernible negative effect on

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 it. Visit virtually any computer software store and
2 you will find a section devoted to used PlayStation
3 games. A quick browse of the Web shows that there
4 is a flourishing market in second-hand video games
5 and DVDs as well, particularly if you look on the
6 auction sites on the Web.

7 The anticircumvention provisions of the
8 DMCA comprise a carefully crafted corrective measure
9 designed to maintain in the digital environment the
10 balance of rights and privileges of authors and
11 users worked out over the past two centuries in the
12 copyright law. The narrow question posed in this
13 rulemaking is whether classes of copyrighted works
14 exist whose users are likely to be substantially
15 adversely affected in their ability to make non-
16 infringing use without exemption from Section
17 1201(a)(1)(A)'s prohibition of circumvention of
18 access controls.

19 The advocates of exemptions bear the
20 burden of persuasion, and they have not sustained
21 it.

22 I thank you again for giving me this
23 opportunity to testify before you, and I will be
24 pleased to answer any questions.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. PETERS: Thank you, Mr. Russell. We
2 now will hear from Mr. Jonathan Hangartner.

3 MR. HANGARTNER: Thank you very much.
4 My name is Jonathan Hangartner. I'm an attorney in
5 San Diego and I represent the company, Bleem Inc.
6 I'd like to thank the Copyright Office for giving
7 Bleem an opportunity to speak today. I'm still
8 hopeful that Mr. Herpolsheimer will make it here so
9 that he can answer any questions you might have.

10 I think it would be helpful for me to
11 briefly describe Bleem and what it does. And it
12 provides a good counterpoint to both Mr. Russell's
13 testimony and also to some of the DVD discussions
14 that you've heard already this afternoon.

15 Bleem is a software company that
16 provides interoperability between different computer
17 systems. Specifically, Bleem produces a software
18 emulator that allows the consumer to play their
19 PlayStation video games on a personal computer. And
20 Bleem will soon introduce a new computer program
21 that allows consumers to play their PlayStation
22 video games on a Sega Dreamcast video game console.

23 For the past year I've spent an awful
24 lot of my time defending Bleem against a lawsuit
25 filed by Sony Computer Entertainment America, and

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 one of the principal claims in that lawsuit is a
2 Digital Millennium Copyright Act claim, although
3 obviously not under Section 1201(a)(1). It alleged
4 that Bleem is a circumvention device because it
5 allows these games to be played -- the PlayStation
6 video games to be played on a personal computer.

7 I think it's important to get into a
8 little bit of detail about how this access
9 restriction that Sony alleges works. Because there
10 are an awful lot of different possibilities for
11 access control technologies, and Sony has a specific
12 one in place which -- it has been sort of put on the
13 table here by Sony. And I think it's useful to take
14 a little bit closer look at it.

15 The access control device that Mr.
16 Russell has described, which he calls the whiz code,
17 is actually a code that is placed onto the
18 PlayStation game discs themselves. A PlayStation
19 video game console, which Sony produces -- and it's
20 their device which plays PlayStation video games --
21 looks for that access control code. And if it's not
22 present, unless the console's modified, it will not
23 play that disc.

24 So, in effect, this whiz code only
25 controls access to PlayStation games on a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 PlayStation console. If a PlayStation game disc is
2 placed into a regular personal computer, CD-drive or
3 into any other CD-drive, that CD-drive will actually
4 read the data on the disc.

5 The access control device, this whiz
6 code, does not prevent the information from being
7 accessed by the disc. Because essentially what
8 happens is the disc drive doesn't know to look for
9 the whiz code. And since it doesn't know to look
10 for the whiz code, the access control doesn't take
11 effect.

12 And this type of situation is addressed
13 in the DMCA in the no-mandate provisions, which do
14 not require consumer devices to search for codes or
15 to look for codes that might control access. But
16 what's happened is that Sony has alleged in the
17 litigation against Bleem that Bleem is a
18 circumvention device.

19 And, in fact, earlier this week a
20 similar claim in another case brought by Sony
21 Computer Entertainment America against another
22 company which produces a PlayStation device,
23 emulation device similar to Bleem -- the District
24 Court in the Northern District of California ruled

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 that it was, in fact, not a violation of DMCA's
2 circumvention device provisions.

3 The concern that Bleem has at this point
4 is that similar lawsuits will come along as soon as
5 Section 1201(a)(1) takes effect. But those lawsuits
6 could be directed at Bleem's customers. It's a very
7 real and likely possibility that, upon enactment of
8 this provision, when this provision takes effect,
9 Sony could allege that Bleem's consumers, when they
10 access the information on the PlayStation disc and
11 play a PlayStation game on either their PC or their
12 Dreamcast are, in fact, circumventing Bleem's
13 technological measures that it alleges are designed
14 to control access to its copyrighted works.

15 This concern, while we think that Bleem
16 certainly could defend such claims, or could assist
17 its customers in defending such claims, the threat
18 of these claims could have a very serious chilling
19 effect on the sales of Bleem and on the use of
20 Bleem's products by consumers.

21 It also has a serious risk of chilling
22 Bleem's ability to distribute its products. Because
23 distributors, retailers, all of the folks up and
24 down the distribution chain are very concerned about
25 potential lawsuits against customers. So the threat

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 of a lawsuit, even if successfully defended, has a
2 powerful impact on the market.

3 The risk is also, I think, very real
4 given the behavior that's been exhibited by Sony in
5 the past. Bleem felt early on, quite strongly, that
6 its device was not covered under the DMCA. It was
7 not a circumvention device. But it's taken a year's
8 worth of litigation and substantial expense to go
9 through the process of litigating claims under this
10 new act.

11 So, in considering these issues of
12 burdens of persuasion and the availability of
13 evidence that establishes a class of works that may
14 be affected by this new provision, I think it's
15 important to keep in mind the detrimental effect of
16 ambiguity. Ambiguity works in favor of large
17 companies, and it allows them to bring lawsuits
18 which, while ultimately unsuccessful, can drive a
19 small company right out of business before they ever
20 get to market.

21 Taking this sort of to the next step, I
22 think it's useful to compare the situation with the
23 PlayStation disc with the DVD/CSS issues that we've
24 been talking about, which involve complicated issues
25 of licensing up and down the distribution chain.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The PlayStation CDs don't have any of
2 these issues. As Mr. Russell described, the
3 PlayStation CDs are actually acquired by the user.
4 So we don't have a situation where the copyrighted
5 work is being licensed to the customer. You have a
6 situation where that customer lawfully acquires a
7 copy of the copyrighted work.

8 Bleem feels very strongly that the
9 consumer's ability to play that copy of the
10 copyrighted work on any platform they choose is a
11 non-infringing use of the copyrighted work, and that
12 must be protected. This provision opens the door
13 for substantial impacts on the consumer's ability to
14 perform that non-infringing use.

15 If, in fact, it was determined that
16 playing a PlayStation disc using Bleem was a
17 circumvention, then all of these consumers would be
18 foreclosed from a clear non-infringing use of that
19 copyrighted work which they paid \$40 for, for a
20 simple CD.

21 So in looking -- again, taking this to
22 the specific and maybe working outward, and trying
23 to get to the particular question the Office has to
24 address here, should there be a class of works that

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 is exempted from this. The PlayStation game CD
2 provides a pretty good example.

3 You have a disc which is sold to
4 customers, which this provision could and is likely
5 to substantially affect their ability to perform
6 non-infringing uses. To the extent that you can get
7 around the chicken and egg problem that you have
8 with this provision in trying to put the burden on
9 the proponents of a particular class of works when
10 the statute has not yet taken effect, so it's
11 virtually impossible to come up with discrete
12 verifiable measurable impacts, this example goes
13 pretty far towards that.

14 Because we have shown the impacts, or we
15 can show the impacts that even a simple DMCA has had
16 on Bleem in trying to sell its product over the past
17 year. And that it's likely, very likely to have a
18 similar effect on consumers down the road.

19 The problem with letting this act take
20 effect, so that we can then ultimately prove this
21 impact, is that three years down the road is an
22 eternity in the age we live in, in terms of the
23 technological advancements. There's a new
24 PlayStation platform coming into effect that's DVD-
25 based. A variety of changes.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So these issues will tend to become moot
2 over the course of that time period. So there's a
3 real risk here that in the course of the three years
4 that it would take to reevaluate a particular
5 exemption, the question will no longer be relevant.

6 I think with that I'll kind of stop my
7 comments here -- we've been talking a lot about in
8 theory and the different ideas going out -- and
9 maybe open it up to questions. If you have any
10 particular questions we can certainly discuss how
11 these access devices work, and the distinctions with
12 the licensing issues between the DVD issues.

13 MS. PETERS: All right. Thank you. It
14 is now five minutes after four. Some people have
15 been sitting here since 1:30. And what we're going
16 to do is take a short break.

17 When we come back, before we ask our own
18 questions, I'm going to give anyone on the panel an
19 opportunity to say anything else that they may want,
20 based on what they've already heard. So why don't
21 we take -- it's now, what, 4:15? We'll come back.

22 (Whereupon, a brief recess was taken.)

23 MS. PETERS: Good afternoon again. We
24 are going to resume the final part of our hearing.
25 And for those of you who find this room a little

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 warm, we have been told that all the facility people
2 have gone for the day. And so there is nothing we
3 can do about it. So, hopefully this won't take too
4 much longer.

5 I left it with anyone who had anything
6 that they wanted to add before we got into questions
7 could do so now. So is there anyone who wishes to
8 speak?

9 MS. GROSS: I just wanted to go back to
10 a few points raised by a couple other folks, and
11 talk about them. The first would be the example
12 given why it should be illegal to circumvent a DVD
13 the same way it's illegal to circumvent HBO. It's
14 really an irrelevant example.

15 Circumventing HBO is something you
16 haven't paid for. If you bought a DVD, if you
17 purchased it, it is something that you have a right
18 to view as opposed to HBO. So that example really
19 doesn't add anything to this discussion.

20 I think it's also important to point out
21 that if many VHS movies are unplayable on machines
22 because of the international difference in
23 standards, that's a pretty good reason to exempt
24 them, simply because it will provide greater
25 opportunity for people to receive copyrighted works

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 they never would have had a right to, or the ability
2 to receive beforehand.

3 I think it's also important to point out
4 that equipment to play a different region's DVDs is
5 not readily available. CSS prohibits such equipment
6 from being marketed in other regions. And Sigma
7 Systems website offers an OEM card for Linux
8 drivers, but it does not sell its computers. So as
9 far as I'm aware there is not yet an available Linux
10 player available to consumers.

11 Another point I wanted to make was that
12 if having content on a single hard disk means that
13 instant massive piracy will occur, why is there no
14 massive piracy since October when DCSS was released?
15 Or since December when it was publicized?

16 I think it's also important to note that
17 the MPAA has said, both publicly and in court
18 depositions, they don't have a single piece of
19 evidence of DCSS-related piracy. Technological
20 measures can never implement the true contours of
21 fair use. So far, every measure offered by
22 providers has been more restrictive than the law
23 allows, not less restrictive.

24 And I also think it's important to point
25 out that Congress intended that access to things

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 like a book be protected, only before purchase, not
2 after. Not after it's been read with impunity. So
3 what's wrong with that for the new media, too? In
4 fact, the DMCA states explicitly that the same
5 limitations shall apply.

6 And my last point is I want to raise
7 that the Supreme Court has said that every person's
8 a publisher on the Internet. And that gives a
9 greater First Amendment protection than paper or
10 other traditional media, not less protection as the
11 copyright -- so I just wanted to make those few
12 points regarding different views that you've heard.

13 MS. PETERS: Thank you. Anyone else?
14 Mr. Goldberg.

15 MR. GOLDBERG: I'm Morton David
16 Goldberg. I have some general comments based on all
17 five days of the hearing.

18 Much of the five days' testimony appears
19 to me as a scenario scripted by Lewis Carroll. I
20 don't propose to revisit the entire scenario, but
21 only to comment briefly on what we've been exposed
22 to, and what may seem to some of us to be a trip
23 down the rabbit hole.

24 Specifically, I propose to mention
25 briefly just the following: One, the purported

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 threats of being thrown in jail or fined criminally.
2 Second, the issue of a congressional imbalance --
3 and I refer to the legislation, not the legislators.
4 Third, the treaty obligations of the United States.
5 Fourth, the claim of an exemption for so-called
6 "fact works" or "thin copyright" works as
7 constituting a particular class for an exemption.
8 Fifth, the First Amendment, freedom of speech, and
9 1201. And lastly, an overview of the five days of
10 testimony.

11 First, with regard to the criminal
12 penalties: there's been a good deal of apprehension
13 voiced, both here and in the hearings in Washington,
14 about the criminal provisions. Apprehension, that
15 is, by librarians and educators.

16 This is perhaps raised, or these
17 statements of apprehension are perhaps made, as a
18 proffer of evidence as to some sort of adverse
19 effect. But unless I'm missing something in my
20 reading of the statute, these claims ignore 1204(b),
21 which exempts libraries and educational institutions
22 from criminal liabilities with regard to 1201 and
23 1202.

24 If the witnesses are concerned, not
25 about the institutions themselves, but about the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 library users, the students and faculty, and
2 researchers, then I think we have to look at
3 1204(a), which says that to constitute a criminal
4 violation it has to be willful, has to be for
5 purposes of commercial advantage or private
6 financial gain.

7 As the panel knows, this is essentially
8 the same language as in the criminal copyright
9 provision, 506(a)(1). And I'm not aware, and I
10 don't think the panel is aware, of any evidence that
11 the longstanding 506 has filled our prisons with
12 librarians, educators, researchers and students.

13 Second, with regard to the matter of
14 balance: the claim has been made that it's up to the
15 Copyright Office and up to the Librarian to strike a
16 balance. Congress has already done so in many pages
17 -- many, many pages of exhaustive and exhausting
18 detail.

19 There is essentially just a single
20 sentence to 1201(a)(1)(A), but there are pages and
21 pages of exceptions.
22 And nothing in Section 1201(a)(1) suggests or
23 permits this panel, or the Librarian, to make
24 amendments to those exceptions, to enlarge them or
25 to diminish them.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 There are also numerous exceptions in
2 Section 108 and elsewhere giving special treatment
3 to a variety of not for profit institutions.
4 Congress has again struck the balance in those
5 provisions. You can mumble various Latin phrases,
6 but in English the essence of it is that specific
7 legislation is to be followed specifically.

8 Treaties: We have the WCT and the WPPT, (the
9 WIPO Copyright Treaty, the WIPO Performances and
10 Phonograms Treaty), and we have TRIPS (the World
11 Trade Organization agreement on Trade-Related
12 Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights) and we have
13 the Berne Convention. As Ms. Gross has reminded
14 you, Article 11 of the WCT (and the parallel
15 provision in WPPT) obligates the U.S. to "provide
16 adequate legal protection and effective legal
17 remedies against the circumvention of effective
18 technological measures."

19 Whether there is "an access right
20 granted" under Section 1201 really doesn't make any
21 difference. It's clear that "adequate legal
22 protection and effective legal remedies" can't be
23 provided against circumvention without 1201. TRIPS
24 requires the U.S. also to give "effective and
25 adequate intellectual property rights."

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The broad exemptions of the sort that
2 have been requested in the five days of the hearings
3 clearly would violate these international
4 obligations. The exemptions would not qualify under
5 the three-step test under WCT Article 10.2, Berne
6 9(2) and TRIPS 13, namely, the three steps that such
7 exemptions can be permitted only in certain special
8 cases, not for all works, not for all works of which
9 fair use is to be made, et cetera.

10 And secondly, exemptions have to be
11 those that do not conflict with a normal
12 exploitation of the work. Selling copies of the
13 Bible in Gutenberg days was the normal exploitation
14 of the work. Now we have many, many, many normal
15 exploitations of the work. And clearly the kind of
16 exemptions that have been requested here would not
17 comply with that portion of the three-step test.

18 And lastly, the three-step test requires
19 that any exemption "not unreasonably prejudice
20 legitimate interests of the author." There has been
21 a great deal of testimony by the copyright owners as
22 to the significant prejudice that would be incurred
23 by them if the exemptions were to be adopted.

24 Third, with regard to "fact works" and
25 "thin copyright" works: mention has been made that

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the anticircumvention provision with regard to these
2 works should not apply, that there should be an
3 exemption for them. And if we look at some of them,
4 we have to wonder what such an exemption would
5 bring.

6 Newspapers are, of course, notably fact
7 works. The Wall Street Journal, it's my
8 understanding, is available online, as is the New
9 York Times. But unlike the New York Times, the Wall
10 Street Journal charges for its subscription. It
11 seems to me that the Wall Street Journal has many,
12 many facts in it.

13 And I just do not think that the
14 congressional contemplation was that the Librarian
15 should adopt an exemption for fact works in order to
16 permit people to circumvent the access control
17 mechanisms of Dow Jones (which I do not represent) in
18 order to thereby make fair use of the facts that are
19 found in the Wall Street Journal.

20 Likewise, with regard to fact-heavy
21 legal treatises. I think the argument would be that
22 they give you the facts of the cases, and the cases,
23 of course, are public domain; so it's clearly fair
24 use to just look at a treatise and get at the public
25 domain material if you just want to know what the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 case held. I don't think that such fact-intensive
2 works should qualify for exemptions. And on and on.

3 Histories have also been mentioned. I
4 guess this would permit us to circumvent access
5 control mechanisms with regard to Arnold Toynbee,
6 Carl Sandburg, Winston Churchill, and on and on, all
7 historians, because clearly there are lots and lots
8 of facts, and we want to get fair use access to
9 them.

10 Fourth, the First Amendment and freedom
11 of speech. Freedom of speech is what the protesters
12 yesterday and today in this proceeding have -- quite
13 properly -- been exercising, telling Congress and
14 the Copyright Office what they should do with the
15 DMCA. That's kind of a bass ostinato to the themes
16 of this proceeding.

17 That's fine. That's freedom of speech.
18 But freedom of speech is not what I understood a
19 speaker to say in the Washington sessions: some
20 sort of right to get at and use copyrighted
21 expression. And if I heard correctly, the speaker
22 in Washington said that the Supreme Court in Harper
23 v. The Nation supported her view.

24 My recollection of Harper v. The Nation
25 is that the decision held just the opposite. That

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the First Amendment gives no privilege to use
2 copyrighted expression, even when the expression is
3 of such great public significance as the memoirs of
4 a former President of the United States.

5 And contrary to what may have been the
6 implication attributed to that decision earlier this
7 afternoon, the fair use safety valve certainly does
8 not exculpate all infringements as mere free speech.

9 I may be the only one, other than the
10 members of the Copyright Office panel, who has sat
11 through the entire five days of the hearings. But
12 it's apparent to me that only in a Lewis Carroll
13 scenario could it be deemed that there's been a
14 sufficient showing of the actual impact or likely
15 impact that the statute requires.

16 There's been no showing of any
17 "substantial diminution" of availability for non-
18 infringing uses; there's been no showing that the
19 prohibition is the cause of any "substantial adverse
20 impact." And prospectively, there has been no
21 showing of "extraordinary circumstances" of likely
22 impact, and no evidence that is "highly specific,
23 strong and persuasive," in the absence of which,
24 Congress has made clear, "the prohibition would be
25 unduly undermined" by conferring any exemption.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I, too, thank you for the opportunity to
2 make these observations at the hearing. And I join
3 Mr. Russell in being pleased to answer any questions
4 you may have.

5 MS. PETERS: Thank you very much.
6 Anyone else? If not, we will start the questioning
7 with our General Counsel, David Carson.

8 MR. CARSON: Thank you. Mr. Marks, we
9 heard from Ms. Gross that there is not yet an
10 available -- Linux player available to consumers.
11 That the Sigma player was the only one available.
12 It's available in OEM product. Is that your
13 understanding, first of all?

14 MR. MARKS: I wish I had more
15 information on that. I know there are two licensees
16 of the CSS technology who are producing applications
17 for Linux system. I know the Sigma design is a
18 hardware application. I don't know exactly how it
19 functions. But I will be happy to get information,
20 more information to you when I find out the details
21 of this license.

22 MR. CARSON: Yes. Thank you.

23 MR. MARKS: I also wanted to mention
24 that the DVD Copy Control Association was actually
25 the organization responsible for administrating the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 CSS licenses. I would be happy to supply the
2 Copyright Office and the Register with any
3 information that they would like.

4 So I will try and get that information,
5 but I would also suggest perhaps an inquiry to them.
6 Or maybe I should suggest to them that they file
7 additional written statements with you.

8 MR. CARSON: The latter might be a good
9 idea. Let's assume for a moment, though, that the
10 statement is correct. Which means, I assume, that
11 if I'm running Linux operating system on my
12 computer, and I want to play DVD, there is no way
13 that I can do that unless I go out and buy a new
14 computer which has this driver on it that's an OEM
15 installation.

16 Isn't that a problem?

17 MR. MARKS: I don't think it's a
18 problem. Because I think, first of all, if you have
19 bought a DVD and you have a software operating
20 system that doesn't support an application to play
21 the DVD, you don't have to buy a new personal
22 computer. You might need to purchase a new
23 operating system, or you might need to purchase a
24 new software application when it becomes available
25 to play DVD, to install on your computer.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 For example, even under the prevalent Windows
2 operating system -- and if I am misspeaking myself,
3 I hope maybe someone who's in the audience from
4 Microsoft will correct me. But I think on prior
5 versions of Microsoft, Microsoft Windows operating
6 system, they didn't have media player pre-installed
7 on the Windows operating system that would allow for
8 playback of DVDs.

9 Therefore if you purchased a DVD and you
10 had a Windows operating system, and you had a PC
11 that had a DVD-ROM drive, you might still need to
12 purchase a software application to enable your PC to
13 play the DVD. So I really don't see where there's a
14 great difference between that situation and the
15 Linux situation.

16 MR. CARSON: Although anyone can get a
17 little media player for free, I think. Can't they?

18 MR. MARKS: That may be the case. But
19 then there's no prohibition to a software developer
20 in taking out a license to create the equivalent
21 application, software application for the Linux
22 system and making it available to its users for
23 free.

24 MR. CARSON: But if no one has done
25 that, why is it a problem for an individual user who

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 wants to be able to watch that DVD on his own
2 computer, which happens to run a Linux operating
3 system, to do what he has to do so that he can view
4 it?

5 MR. MARKS: The problem with that is
6 that it's not simply a matter of the encryption and
7 protection on the DVD disk guaranteeing the payment
8 by that individual user for the copy of the disk.
9 The whole purpose of the encryption in the first
10 place is because it carries with it certain copy
11 control applications.

12 As Ms. Gross correctly said, one of
13 those applications, for example, is that the content
14 not be permitted to flow out a digital output from a
15 computer. If the user is allowed to circumvent the
16 technical protection measures, yes, that may enable
17 the consumer to view the content from the DVD disk.

18 But it may also, and likely would also,
19 undermine the other protections that are inherent in
20 the DVD system, and allow for very easy unauthorized
21 reproduction and distribution of the content of the
22 DVD. For example, over the Internet. So that's the
23 risk that is entailed by allowing for that
24 individual circumvention.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: Ms. Gross, let's assume
2 that between now and October 28th, Sigma or somebody
3 else do release whatever equipment it is for
4 commercial purchase, so you can go down to Comp USA
5 or wherever, and buy what you need to put on your
6 machine running with this operating system and view
7 DVDs. Is that going to moot the issue, at least
8 with respect to Linux users?

9 MS. GROSS: Well, the problem is that
10 there are additional operating systems that are
11 being created every day. And individuals should not
12 be required to go out and purchase a \$10,000 license
13 in order to build an application that will play
14 their DVDs. That's something that would be
15 unprecedented in other forms of media.

16 Additionally, there are problems with --
17 there are antitrust problems for tying the hardware,
18 the machine, to the software itself, the DVD.
19 Microsoft is about to be broken up for this very
20 reason. And so I think you need to think about
21 antitrust implications in tying the two together as
22 well.

23 MR. CARSON: Okay. But let's focus just
24 on Linux users. I know there are other operating
25 systems out there. But certainly, from personal

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 experience I can say, having looked at the comments
2 that have come in to us, the vast majority of
3 comments we have received in this proceeding have
4 been from people who run computers on -- with a
5 Linux operating system that are upset that they
6 can't use those computers to watch DVDs.

7 So let's focus purely on those people.

8 MS. GROSS: Linux users.

9 MR. CARSON: Linux users, yes. If, in
10 fact, the Sigma piece of equipment suddenly were
11 available on the shelves of your nearest computer
12 equipment store, would there still be a problem for
13 Linux users? Or would Linux users basically --
14 would you have to say on behalf of Linux users --
15 assuming you're speaking on behalf of them -- will
16 find that problem solved? No need for the Librarian
17 to address that aspect of the problem?

18 MS. GROSS: Well, I think it would
19 depend on the terms of the license for CSS. The
20 thing that is so attractive to people for using
21 Linux is their ability to manipulate their own
22 software on their own machines.

23 And if the Linux player prohibits
24 people's ability to use their machines, and to
25 manipulate the software and images in ways that they

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 have a legal right to do, I think we'd still have a
2 problem. So I wait and see this machine, and what
3 it does and what it doesn't do.

4 MR. CARSON: Okay. Let me ask a
5 question for any of the representatives of the
6 copyright owners who would like to take a stab at
7 it. And I recognize we've heard this a hundred
8 different ways over the five days of testimony. But
9 if someone could just sort of put in a nutshell why
10 is it that we want to protect technological measures
11 that control access to copyrighted works? Why is it
12 important to do that?

13 MR. METALITZ: I'll answer that question
14 on two levels. One that we should never overlook,
15 is that it's important because Congress has decided
16 it is important. And that obviously constrains what
17 this rulemaking proceeding can do within that
18 determination that's already been made.

19 But I think the larger reason, and the
20 reason why Congress decided that it was important to
21 protect it, is that these types of measures are
22 really key enabling tools for electronic commerce.
23 If we're serious about developing electronic
24 commerce works of authorship, then we have to
25 recognize -- as you've heard today from Sony

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Computer Entertainment America and from Time Warner
2 and MPAA -- that that commerce is not going to
3 exist, or it's going to be extremely stunted and
4 distorted unless copyright owners have the ability
5 to use these types of technological control
6 measures.

7 They need to have the ability to manage
8 and control access to their works in order to
9 disseminate them more broadly. They need to have
10 the legal back-up to prevent, or to deal with
11 instances of circumvention.

12 So if we want to see a thriving
13 electronic marketplace in these works, we need to
14 have these tools to do that, and Congress recognized
15 that. And so did the other countries, the more than
16 one hundred countries that adopted the WIPO
17 treaties. That's a very important step.

18 Because this is a new aspect to
19 international discipline in the field of copyright.
20 It really is not like what has been done in the
21 Berne convention, or the TRIP Agreement. It goes a
22 step beyond that. And I think that is fueled by a
23 recognition that this is essential. We need these
24 tools in order to make copyrighted materials

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 available around the world in a global electronic
2 market.

3 MR. GOLDBERG: If the value can be taken
4 without having to pay for it, then the copyright
5 owners are not going to create the value.

6 MR. MARKS: I would also like to
7 supplement that. While the legal protections for
8 technical protection measures are new in our
9 copyright law with the DMCA, and are relatively new
10 internationally to copyright law dating back to 1996
11 with the adoption of the two WIPO treaties -- the
12 concept of giving legal protection to technical
13 measures that control access to works is not new.

14 The Communications Act of our United
15 States law, as passed by Congress, has protected
16 encrypted broadcast signals, whether they be radio
17 signals or television signals, for decades. I
18 cannot tell you exactly from when that law dates. I
19 have it back in my office, and I'd be happy to do a
20 supplemental submission on that.

21 But there's the Satellite Home Viewer
22 Act of, I think, 1988 or 1984. And Section -- I
23 think it's 301 or 201 of the Communications Act
24 beforehand which prohibits the unauthorized
25 descrambling of encrypted signals for exactly the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 reasons that have been stated by the other speakers.
2 That it has been deemed necessary to provide legal
3 back-up for these technological protection measures
4 to facilitate commerce and copyrighted broadcasts or
5 signals and, now in the new digital environment,
6 other works that can be made available in electronic
7 form.

8 MR. CARSON: Now, CSS -- clarify for me.
9 CSS is an access control device, or a copy control
10 device, or both?

11 MR. MARKS: I'm so glad you asked that
12 question. Because this is the way CSS works. Can I
13 give a little bit of background on this?

14 MR. CARSON: I think you need to answer
15 it, yes.

16 MR. MARKS: Okay. Originally, when
17 content owners were looking to try and protect their
18 content on this new digital format of DVD, they
19 tried to come up with a legislative approach whereby
20 copy control flags would be inserted in the DVDs,
21 which is strictly a copy control technology. And
22 playback devices, whether they be consumer
23 electronic devices or computers, would be mandated
24 by legislation to look for and respond to those copy
25 control flags.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So that would have involved strictly a
2 copy control technology, as enforced by law.
3 Somewhat similar and based on the Audio Home
4 Recording Act. The Motion Picture Association of
5 America started -- entered into negotiations with
6 the consumer electronics companies to develop
7 exactly such a technological system and legislative
8 structure.

9 Those discussions resulted in a draft
10 piece of legislation called the Digital Video Home
11 Recording Rights Act, or Home Recording Act.
12 Something like that, DVRA, I think we refer to it.

13 When those discussions were opened up to
14 the computer industry, the computer industry said,
15 "No. We cannot sign onto this. We do not agree
16 with the concept of having Congress mandate that our
17 devices look for and respond to copy control flags
18 and content. Copy control flags are essentially
19 ancillary data that are easy to get lost and it
20 would be very burdensome to make our machines have
21 to look at all the streams of data, especially
22 digital data which basically are just ones and
23 zeroes, and have to affirmatively look for these
24 copy control flags. We won't do it, we won't sign
25 on for it."

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And the strength of the computer
2 industry is really demonstrated in the no-mandate
3 provision of the DMCA. That there is no mandate to
4 affirmatively look for copy protection measures.

5 So here we were, after months if not
6 years of work, kind of back at square zero. What
7 are we going to do? The computer industry did
8 acknowledge that making our films available in
9 digital format did pose works. We did, after weeks
10 and months of discussions, get them to realize that,
11 unlike software, you know, Warner Brothers is still
12 exploiting Casablanca in Version 1.0.

13 Now, we don't update it, we don't change
14 it. We -- you know, it's the same classic movie
15 that we exploit. So once somebody has a copy of it,
16 they don't have an incentive to get the revised
17 copy. The work is the work.

18 Understanding that, the computer
19 industry came back to us and said, "Fine. This is
20 our position. If data is coming to our machines in
21 the clear," meaning unencrypted, descrambled, "We
22 believe we have no obligation to look for any copy
23 control flags, to look for any copy protection
24 devices, or to really follow any rules with respect
25 to that data. The data comes in the clear, and we

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 can -- our machines should be able to do whatever
2 they like with that data, and send it out the
3 machine in the clear."

4 Now, this is completely apart from any
5 copyright rules, or the fact that if a user is
6 making unauthorized copies that he may be infringing
7 the copyright law.

8 They said, "But if that data is
9 scrambled, if it is encrypted, and we want our
10 machines, our computers to make use of that data,
11 then we have a choice. We can either sign up and
12 get a license to decrypt that data and follow the
13 rules and conditions that are in that license. Or
14 our machines will simply pass along the encrypted
15 data, keeping it in encrypted form. We agree that
16 our devices and machines should not be permitted to
17 simply descramble and hack through an encryption
18 system without any sort of authorization or
19 permission."

20 Having reached that understanding, that
21 is the basis upon which we built the CSS system.
22 The CSS system, called Content Scramble System,
23 involves initially scrambling the content on the DVD
24 disk. So it is encrypted, even though that's
25 completely transparent to the user.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Because when you put your DVD into your
2 DVD player, or your DVD computer, in most
3 circumstances you just press "Play" and the disk
4 plays. So you don't even necessarily realize that
5 it's encrypted, but the disks are encrypted.

6 Those device manufacturers whether they
7 be players or personal computers or the Sony
8 PlayStation who would like to have their devices be
9 able to display and play back those DVD disks need
10 to get a license to be able to decrypt the CSS
11 encryption system. They do that by going to the
12 DVD-CCA and applying for a CSS license.

13 That CSS license gives them the keys and
14 tools to be able to decrypt the disks. It also
15 imposes certain conditions on what the device can do
16 with the content once it is decrypted. One of those
17 obligations, for example, is that the content is not
18 allowed to flow out in the clear on a digital
19 output.

20 Another example of an obligation is that
21 the device has to insert Macrovision on the content
22 before it goes out the analog output. So by this
23 combination of encryption technology and licensing,
24 you have really a structure that involves access
25 control and copy protection.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: Well, it sounds -- I'm
2 sorry, someone else?

3 MR. HANGARTNER: I was just about to
4 jump in with a comment. I mean, I think this
5 discussion needs to step back a little bit and look
6 at the DMCA. As Professor Samuelson mentioned in
7 her comments to the court in one of the CSS cases
8 back in New York, that these DMCA access provisions,
9 circumvention provisions are really an adjunct means
10 of regulating company infringement. They're not
11 really an end in themselves, particularly when we're
12 talking about a lot of different situations.

13 We've got broadcast situations, we've
14 got pay-per-view situations, you've got end-users
15 that actually buy a copy of the copyrighted work.
16 It really has to be viewed in that context, that
17 this is a means of regulating copyright infringement
18 rather than an end in itself.

19 I think it's also important to, as you
20 look at these things, to think a little bit about
21 what these access control mechanisms do. For
22 example, the whiz code that's used by Sony is not
23 really a copy protection system. What it does is it
24 limits the games that can be played on a PlayStation
25 console.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 This serves a variety of purposes. By
2 linking together this access control system with the
3 patents that Sony has obtained that relate to that
4 access control system, Sony's created a system where
5 PlayStation video games can only be published by a
6 licensed game developer. So they use this as a
7 means to control the ability of people to make games
8 that can be played on a PlayStation console. So
9 that they maintain control over all of the creative
10 works that can be used on that console system.

11 They also use it to put in place these
12 regional controls that we talked a little bit about
13 before. So this whiz code, it doesn't prevent
14 copying of the disks. I mean, you can copy a
15 PlayStation disk. It may or may not copy that whiz
16 code, but you can copy the PlayStation disk and
17 access the information off that copy on a device
18 other than a PlayStation console.

19 So, I guess the thrust of my comment is
20 really to keep in mind that core purpose of access,
21 circumvention and control as an adjunct to copyright
22 infringement, which is what this is really all
23 about. Preventing infringement of people's
24 copyright.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I wanted to mention, David Herpolsheimer
2 has showed up. I think he may want to jump here
3 with a quick comment on the same subject, if that's
4 okay.

5 MR. CARSON: Well, if we get a chance,
6 in a while. But I sort of would like to stick with
7 what I was talking about with Mr. Marks.

8 It strikes me that what we are
9 describing is perhaps a copying control device in
10 access control clothing. In other words, you've got
11 a device that controls access to a work, but not in
12 the way that, certainly before this rulemaking
13 began, I thought we were talking about. We were
14 talking about access control devices.

15 In other words, I assumed -- naively,
16 perhaps -- that a technological measure that
17 controls access to a work, the purpose of that is to
18 make sure that authorized users and only authorized
19 users are getting access to the works. So if I paid
20 the price to the copyright owner otherwise be able
21 to use that work, then I'm entitled to use it.

22 And if he somehow gets access to it by
23 circumventing encryption or passwords, or whatever,
24 then she's in trouble because she's not an
25 authorized user. I'm not in trouble because I am.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 That's got nothing to do, as far as I can tell, with
2 what you're talking about.

3 What you're really talking about, I
4 think, is an access control measure that is designed
5 to channel someone towards a device which has copy
6 controls on it. Is that a fair description, or am I
7 misdescribing it?

8 MR. MARKS: I think it's partially a
9 fair description. I think it is also used -- the
10 fact that the work is encrypted is used to try and
11 guarantee that the user has legitimately -- has
12 legitimate access to the work as well. I mean, I
13 don't think it's completely devoid, the CSS system,
14 of trying to ensure that those people that -- for
15 example, would just simply duplicate the DVD disks -
16 - you know, pirates who would duplicate the DVD
17 disks.

18 And if there were pirate players that
19 were unlicensed, they wouldn't be able to play those
20 disks because they were encrypted with CSS. That
21 serves an access control function as well.

22 MR. CARSON: But a duplicated --

23 MR. MARKS: A duplicated DVD disk is
24 going to duplicate the CSS encryption.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: And can be played on any
2 legitimate player.

3 MR. MARKS: And can be played on any
4 legitimate player, legitimate licensed CSS player.
5 And not be played on non-licensed players.

6 MR. CARSON: Okay. So I don't see how
7 you're stopping the -- I don't see how you're
8 stopping the piracies of DVDs in that respect.
9 Pirated DVDs can be sold on the open marketplace and
10 played in any legitimate DVD player.

11 MR. MARKS: Without infringement
12 copyright?

13 MR. CARSON: No, no, no. Certainly not.
14 But we know pirated goods are on the market all the
15 time.

16 MR. MARKS: Yes, they are.

17 MR. CARSON: And infringing copyrights,
18 that's very nice to know they're still out there.
19 So I'm trying to figure out what this technological
20 measure is doing, and I'm not seeing it as really in
21 any way restricting access to authorized users.
22 I'll get to you in a moment, Steve.

23 In other words, there's no reason to
24 believe as a general proposition that someone who
25 has a commercially manufactured and marketed DVD,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 manufactured by Sony, perhaps, or any of the major
2 studios -- Time Warner, whatever -- is not an
3 authorized user.

4 If someone has that DVD which is
5 manufactured by Time Warner, you're going to presume
6 they're an authorized user, aren't you?

7 MR. MARKS: Yes. Although you'd have to
8 sort of define what you mean by authorized user. If
9 someone has purchased a DVD from Time Warner,
10 they're authorized to play it on a licensed DVD
11 player. They can play it as many times as they
12 want, there's no restriction on saying it's a one-
13 time play, it's a two-time play.

14 Are they authorized to make
15 reproductions of it, are they authorized to copy it
16 to their hard drive, are they authorized to
17 redistribute it in electronic form? The answer is
18 no. So what do you mean by authorized user?

19 MR. CARSON: Are they authorized to view
20 it on any machine they can find, that they can make
21 to view it?

22 MR. MARKS: No, no. They're authorized
23 to view it on a licensed device. If someone were to
24 buy a VHS cassette, and they didn't have a VHS
25 player, are they authorized to disassemble the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 videocassette, reproduce the film in there and
2 convert it into a 35-millimeter print and play it on
3 their film projector? I don't think so.

4 MR. CARSON: Okay. But, first of all,
5 there's no contractual privity between the purchaser
6 of that DVD and Time Warner, I assume. There's no
7 shrink-wrapped license. You know, you don't sign a
8 license saying, "I agree only to play this on an
9 authorized player," when you purchase the DVD.

10 MR. MARKS: That's correct. And neither
11 is there a shrink-wrapped license when you buy a VHS
12 cassette that's in NTSC format, and you only have a
13 PAL player.

14 MR. CARSON: Okay. I go to Europe, I
15 buy a videocassette, it's PAL. I bring it back here
16 and when I play it, I find, oh my God, I got a --
17 what was I thinking?

18 MR. MARKS: Right.

19 MR. CARSON: But, wait a minute. I can
20 take it down to a shop and they can convert it for
21 me to NTSC, and they'll make a copy for my own
22 personal use for NTSC. Would doing that be a
23 violation of Section 1201(a)?

24 MR. MARKS: It would not be a violation
25 of Section 1201(a), because that's not a technical

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 protection measure. The fact that it's in PAL is
2 not a technical -- or encryption. It's not a form
3 of technological protection measure.

4 I thought you were going to ask me,
5 frankly, would that be a violation of copyright.
6 And I'm not sure I have the answer to that. A
7 commercial service that is reproducing copyrighted
8 films into different formats, I think they might
9 well be violating copyright law.

10 MR. CARSON: We don't have to resolve
11 anything here.

12 MR. MARKS: I'm glad we don't have to.

13 MR. CARSON: But getting back to what we
14 were talking about. The kinds of things you were
15 talking about -- yes, if I buy the DVD I certainly
16 would not have the right to make copies of it, I'll
17 grant you that. But why don't I have the right to
18 put it on my computer that maybe running a Linux
19 operating system? And maybe I can't get a hold of
20 any equipment that is authorizing license that will
21 allow me to view that DVD player.

22 But if I can get a hold of that DCSS
23 code, and if I can manage to crack that myself, so
24 that I can view it on my own computer, where's the
25 problem? Whose rights have I violated?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. MARKS: Okay. I'm a little
2 uncomfortable about talking about DCSS because of
3 the ongoing litigation.

4 MR. CARSON: Well, let me tell you that
5 you better get comfortable because this is a
6 rulemaking that could affect DCSS.

7 MR. MARKS: That's fine, that's fine.
8 But, you know, let me try and answer the question
9 for you. It's a matter of balance.

10 As I was trying to describe before, if I
11 can, as an individual user, circumvent the
12 technological protection measure on a DVD disk, and
13 copy that content to my hard drive, there is a risk
14 that the content owner has that the use by that
15 individual will not simply be home viewing, but may
16 also be infringing. Making unauthorized
17 reproductions, making distributions over the
18 Internet.

19 This is not sort of speculative use,
20 people do that with MP3 files of music all the time
21 today. Given that degree of risk, the inconvenience
22 that is posed to a user who purchases a DVD disk,
23 but doesn't have a DVD player -- which you can get
24 for under \$200 -- or a software program that he can
25 install on his computer, or her computer to play the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 disk, if you balance those out I think the
2 inconvenience to the individual user is far
3 outweighed by the risks to the copyright owners.

4 And the risk to the general public that
5 if this sort of circumvention is permitted, then
6 millions of DVDs that are sold today may not be sold
7 tomorrow. Because content owners may decide it's
8 simply too great of a risk for them to put their
9 content on that digital format. That's the
10 balancing that needs to take place, in my view.

11 MR. CARSON: And I'm not sure you've got
12 the wrong balance there, philosophically. But just
13 looking at the scheme we have in Section 1201,
14 Congress made the judgment that it was not going to
15 make it unlawful for an individual to circumvent the
16 technological measure that controls the use of a
17 work. Copying and so on.

18 It did make the judgment that it would
19 make it unlawful to circumvent a technological
20 measure that controls access to a work. And again,
21 isn't this access control measure -- CSS that you're
22 talking about -- a measure that is really designed
23 as its end, not to control access but to control the
24 use, by channeling you to that device whose purpose
25 is to control use?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. MARKS: Well, I think the problem
2 is, is it's mixed. I mean, as I was trying to
3 describe, we could not put in an effective
4 technological measure that would not fail us with
5 respect to the no-mandate provision in the DMCA,
6 without employing encryption, which is an access
7 control technology.

8 So the very structure of the DMCA
9 itself, in terms of the no-mandate provision kind of
10 forced our hand to go to the structure. Now, I want
11 to be very clear. We already had devised the CSS
12 structure prior to the implementation of the DMCA in
13 October of 1998.

14 But the DMCA only reinforced that
15 structure that we adopted with CSS, as a result of
16 the computer industries saying to us, "If the
17 content is scrambled, we will not descramble it. We
18 will not have our machines descramble it without
19 authorization. If the content is in the clear,
20 don't ask us to try and follow any rules with
21 respect to that content."

22 MR. CARSON: Steve, you've been wanting
23 to jump in.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. METALITZ: Yes. If I may, just
2 three reactions to this line of questioning. First,
3 I've said it before and I'm sure we'll say it again.

4 But it is significant that in your
5 drawing a distinction between access controls that
6 are set up with the goal of preventing infringement,
7 piracy, unauthorized uses, and some other types of
8 access controls that perhaps don't have that close a
9 link to infringement -- it is significant to me that
10 Congress did not make that distinction.

11 Congress did not say that access control
12 mechanisms that are for some pure and noble purpose
13 other than preventing piracy have a privileged
14 status, and more protection against circumvention
15 than those that are -- as I think Dean has indicated
16 -- closely linked to the preventing or dealing with
17 a huge risk of rampant piracy that CSS is intended
18 to address.

19 And since this is not a congressional
20 committee, but a rulemaking created by Congress, I
21 think it's important to respect both the
22 distinctions Congress did make and the distinctions
23 Congress did not make.

24 Secondly, I don't think that the type of
25 system that CSS represents is quite as brand new and

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 unprecedented as your question might have implied.
2 I don't think it's really much different in kind
3 from other types of access controls such as what
4 we've heard about before, and probably you heard
5 about earlier this week. A license that would only
6 allow access to certain material from certain
7 designated machines, designated by IP number, or
8 some other fashion.

9 Now, that's not the exactly the same as
10 only allowing it from licensed players. But it's
11 similar in the sense that it is an access control
12 that manifests itself by saying, "This material may
13 be accessed on certain machines, and not on other
14 machines."

15 And again, that's exactly the kind of
16 access control Congress had in mind when it enacted
17 Section 1201(a)(1), and that it wanted this
18 rulemaking to look at.

19 Finally, it just strikes me that this
20 whole CSS issue is almost a model for a business
21 case of a problem, if it is one, that can be solved
22 by the marketplace, and probably is being solved by
23 the marketplace.

24 If there isn't currently a freestanding
25 Linux player, a Linux plug-in that can be used to

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 play DVDs on a Linux-based computer -- if there's a
2 market to do that, it strikes me that having to pay
3 \$10,000 for the license, if the market is more than
4 a couple thousand people, that's probably a pretty
5 good deal. And that market need will be filled.

6 It's also important to recognize that we
7 sometimes think of the only platforms for playing
8 DVDs as DVD players and computers. But, in fact, I
9 would venture to say that at least in Japan today,
10 neither of those is the main way that people watch
11 DVDs.

12 The main way they watch DVDs is using their
13 PlayStation 2. That did more to advance the sales
14 of DVDs in Japan than anything else. That may
15 someday be the case here.

16 There are going to be many platforms.
17 There already are, and there are going to be more.
18 I think the only thing that perhaps makes it a
19 little difficult for us to see that this is an issue
20 that the market is going to solve, and that people
21 will have access to a wide variety of platforms on
22 which to play DVDs is that there's kind of a
23 theological taint to this as well. I think we ought
24 to get it out in the open.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And even if the plug-in for playing, for
2 example, a DVD on Windows were available for free --
3 and maybe it is, for all I know. I don't know what
4 the strategy is for distributing that. Even if it
5 were free, there are people, probably some in this
6 room, that wouldn't do it because they don't want
7 their machines to be tainted by anything that
8 emanates from Redmond, Washington.

9 That's a fact. And if that constitutes
10 a sufficient market, that market need is going to be
11 fulfilled. But it is a little different from the
12 typical market situation, where people aren't
13 theologically motivated in their decisions, but
14 they're motivated by other factors of what's
15 cheapest and what's most efficient and what works
16 best, and so on and so forth.

17 So, I think that sometimes clouds the
18 picture a little bit. It makes it a little harder
19 to see that this is really a marketplace issue that
20 the marketplace is likely to resolve. And the
21 result is going to be that virtually anybody that
22 wants to watch DVDs on any platform that's readily
23 available will be able to do so.

24 MR. MARKS: Can I take one more shot at
25 responding? I think one of the underlying

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 assumptions of your question, if I can be so
2 presumptuous, is that if you have bought a DVD disk
3 you have the right to access the content that's on
4 the DVD disk. And so if you don't have the
5 appropriate playback equipment, why shouldn't you be
6 able to circumvent the protections to get at the
7 content?

8 I think that argument would be more
9 powerful if, in fact, the content was only released
10 on a DVD disk. But, in fact, if you want to see
11 "The Matrix," you don't have to buy a DVD to do so.
12 You could see it in the theater, you could see it on
13 VHS.

14 So the fact that the work is available
15 in many alternative formats seems to me to also
16 justify the fact that one should not permit
17 circumvention of a technological protection measure
18 by a user simply because the user has chosen to
19 purchase the work in a format for which the user
20 doesn't have an appropriate player. And for which
21 alternative players are available on the market at
22 very consumer-friendly prices. It seems like a
23 fairly weak argument to me.

24 MR. CARSON: But it is my understanding
25 that the quality of what you see on DVD is much

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 better than that which you see on VHS, for example.
2 And it's also my understanding that oftentimes when
3 you get a motion picture on DVD, there's a lot of
4 added value material that you don't get on a VHS.

5 MR. MARKS: Precisely why consumers go
6 out and buy new equipment. When CDs were first
7 released, nobody had CD players. Consumers decided
8 that, "Hey, this is a great format, it's worth my
9 investment in a new piece of playback equipment." I
10 see no difference in the DVD context.

11 If consumers like the new material
12 that's available on DVD, like the new quality that's
13 available on DVD, they have a choice. They can buy
14 the DVD and buy a piece of playback equipment, or
15 not.

16 MR. CARSON: Ms. Gross, maybe you can
17 help me out. I'm reading my notes, but I'm not
18 quite sure I'm recalling what you said. But you
19 said something to the effect that -- were you saying
20 that someone from MPAA had stated that a person
21 wanting to make a fair use of a DVD should have to
22 obtain a license to do so?

23 MS. GROSS: That's right.

24 MR. CARSON: Repeat that, and tell me
25 who it was that said that.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. GROSS: Sure. Let me just remember.
2 I was at a conference at Yale Law School a few weeks
3 ago, and General Deputy Counsel of the MPAA -- I
4 believe Geckner was his last name. One of the
5 audience members posed him a question, and said,
6 "I'm a multimedia artist, and I rely on making fair
7 use of clips of videos for creating new works. If I
8 want to use the DVD to copy a small clip of that to
9 include in a new work that I'm going to create, is
10 it your position that I would be required to get a
11 license?" And the MPAA said yes, it is.

12 MR. CARSON: Would that be your
13 position,
14 Dean?

15 MR. MARKS: What my position would be is
16 that I don't think wanting to use clips from a DVD
17 that might constitute and qualify for fair use in a
18 new work would be sufficient justification to
19 circumvent the technological protection measure of a
20 CSS system that's on a DVD.

21 Does that mean that the multimedia
22 artist is completely out of luck? I don't think so.
23 Because the multimedia artist can access clips of
24 the content from a VHS copy, or when the content

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 from the DVD is playing on screen, make a camcorder
2 copy of the content and use it.

3 And people may laugh about that, but the
4 highest -- one of the largest sources of piracy of
5 our films is from people bringing camcorders into
6 movie theaters and making camcorder copies, and then
7 reproducing them. And you'd be surprised at how
8 good the quality is.

9 MR. CARSON: Well, I've seen some of the
10 pretty poor quality ones.

11 MR. MARKS: Some are pretty poor
12 quality, some are pretty good quality.

13 MR. CARSON: Okay. One last thing I'd
14 like to ask you, Mr. Marks, on this subject. You
15 give a very articulate explanation and justification
16 for the regional codes, and the way in which motion
17 pictures are marketed.

18 Given all that, however, why should it
19 be a violation of the law for an individual who may
20 go to Europe or Asia, or wherever, and pick up a DVD
21 of a motion picture there and bring it home, to
22 circumvent for his or her own personal use, so he or
23 she can view that DVD in his or her own home? Why
24 is that a problem?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. MARKS: It really goes to the same
2 question you asked about the access control, why
3 it's a problem if they don't have a player. It's
4 because of the fact that the technological
5 protection measure is not only dealing with access,
6 but is also dealing with subsequent uses of the
7 content.

8 I would like to just say a couple of
9 points about the regional coding, which I missed.
10 And which some of my colleagues pointed out to me.

11 MR. CARSON: Okay.

12 MR. MARKS: Another reason why we need
13 regional coding, why we do regional coding is that
14 the law in various territories is different with
15 regard to censorship requirements. So we cannot
16 simply distribute the same work throughout the world
17 in the same version. Local laws impose censorship
18 regulations on us that require us to both exhibit
19 and distribute versions of the films that comply
20 with those censorship requirements.

21 In addition, the way -- at least the
22 economics of our business currently work, when we
23 license distribution of our works to licensees in
24 other countries, whether it be video distributors or
25 broadcast distributors, often a precondition in the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 license contract that the distributor seeks is that
2 the film has had a theatrical release in the U.S.
3 prior to being exploited in the foreign country.

4 So, those are two other additional
5 considerations as to why the regional coding scheme
6 is in place in the first place.

7 MR. CARSON: Now, if I understand your
8 explanation why it's a problem to even let the
9 individual user circumvent, to watch that foreign
10 DVD, it's not that it would be such a horrible thing
11 for the copyright owner if one person, one
12 individual happened to see it in his or her home at
13 a time when he shouldn't have, but that it's linked
14 to these other protections.

15 MR. MARKS: That's correct. If there
16 was some way to guarantee that a person who was
17 circumventing the CSS protection technology to view
18 a Region 2 disk on a Region 1 player was only going
19 to view that disk on the player in the privacy of
20 his or her own home, without further distributing or
21 copying the disk, it would be less of a problem.

22 There's still the problems associated
23 that I described before about the windows of
24 exploitation. Which would make it problematic if
25 instead of your one individual, it was with the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 entire population of Italy that, each in the privacy
2 of his or her own home circumvented regional coding
3 to play a DVD of a movie that had not yet been
4 theatrically released in Italy and was scheduled to
5 be released in the future. Yes, that would have a
6 detrimental impact on us.

7 But in your hypothetical of a single
8 individual user, I would say, yes. If that single
9 individual user were circumventing solely to be able
10 to view the content of the DVD disk in the privacy
11 of his or her own home, with some iron-clad
12 guarantee that the circumvention was not going to
13 lead to further risks of unauthorized reproduction
14 and distribution, I would agree with you, this is
15 not a "horrible thing - i.e. a substantial problem
16 for - the copyright owner.

17 MR. CARSON: But why is it that CSS had
18 to be designed in such a way that someone who
19 circumvented in order to overcome the regional
20 coding, also necessarily would be circumventing the
21 copy protection? Couldn't you have done it in a
22 different way that it wouldn't have been a problem?

23 MR. MARKS: No. It isn't that it's
24 necessarily designed that way. Well, let me back
25 up.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The way the CSS system works is that the
2 content in the clear is restricted from being made
3 available on a hard drive of a computer, or what's
4 known as a user-accessible bus. I can only speak to
5 the unauthorized decryption systems that have --
6 that the hack, frankly, of DSS that has occurred to
7 date. And with that hack the content of the DVD
8 disk is made available in the clear, on a computer
9 user's hard drive. And so that is a problem.

10 We didn't design it so that any attempts
11 to circumvent would mean it killed the whole system,
12 but in fact the circumvention device program that's
13 been developed to date accomplishes that, imposes
14 that risk. And the problems with that is that that
15 circumvention device is distributed with messages
16 that say, "Here it is, copy DVDs to your heart's
17 content, send them to your friends." So it poses
18 the parade of horrible risks that we're concerned
19 about.

20 MR. CARSON: On the subject of regional
21 coding, Ms. Gross, you spent a fair amount of time
22 talking about that as being a problem. I'm trying
23 to figure out how big a problem it really is. And
24 how many U.S. residents actually go abroad and bring

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 back foreign DVDs, and then find themselves
2 frustrated by their inability to play them?

3 MS. GROSS: I think many probably do. I
4 don't have a number, I don't have a statistic. But
5 I think it's fairly common. When you travel, you
6 like to -- myself, I like to get music from whatever
7 region I'm in, and bring it back home with me. I'm
8 sure some people are perhaps the same way for
9 movies. And so I think it's a huge
10 problem. But again, I don't have a number that this
11 number of people by DVDs abroad. That I can't tell
12 you.

13 MR. CARSON: You think it's huge enough,
14 though, that we should make an exemption to a right
15 that Congress has said that copyright owners have a
16 right to do, just because you think that there may
17 be a few people -- or even quite a few people -- who
18 might find themselves inconvenienced in that way?

19 MS. GROSS: Well, I think I know that we
20 are. I think that, judging from the enormous number
21 of comments that were received from people
22 complaining about their inability to watch their
23 DVDs, that it is a problem. It's a rather large
24 problem. And it also is a problem outside the U.S.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 The proceeding here was not just
2 designed to decide whether or not U.S. residents
3 would be able to watch their DVDs, but whether
4 people in general were allowed to watch their --
5 would be restricted from non-infringing uses.

6 And you think about entire worldwide
7 audience of people who want access to watching DVDs
8 from worldwide producers, that's a large number.

9 MR. CARSON: Are you saying that Section
10 1201 has extra-territorial application? I'm not
11 sure I follow what you're saying.

12 MS. GROSS: No, I'm not saying that at
13 all. I'm just saying that there's a lot of people
14 in the U.S. and in the world who are prohibited.

15 MR. CARSON: Okay. But I'm trying to
16 figure out why we should be concerned about people
17 elsewhere in the world who are prohibited. Because
18 I don't understand how Section 1201 affects them,
19 and therefore I don't understand why we should be
20 considering an exemption for Section 1201 for their
21 benefit.

22 MS. GROSS: Well, I think it's also
23 important to note that it's not just when you travel
24 that you want to get a DVD and bring it back. But
25 you simply can't purchase or order DVDs from foreign

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 distributors. Maybe you want to get a DVD of an
2 Indian movie, and you're prohibited from playing it
3 on your device when you bring it -- when it arrives
4 in the mail.

5 MR. MARKS: But if I could respond just
6 for a moment. The Indian producer, the Indian film
7 producer is not prohibited from producing DVD disks
8 that would be playable on Region 1 machines. So,
9 for example, we produce DVD disks that are playable
10 on Region 1 devices and Region 2 devices and Region
11 3 devices, etc. And there's no prohibition on a
12 producer from producing DVD disks that are playable
13 on different regions.

14 And, in fact, the producer has the
15 ability to produce a single DVD disk that would be
16 playable on all regions. If you have a producer, a
17 content owner who is not concerned about the windows
18 of exploitation, they can produce a DVD disk that's
19 multiregion, and playable on all regional players
20 throughout the world. So there is flexibility built
21 into the system.

22 MR. CARSON: I may be exhausting your
23 knowledge here, but let's take that example. And
24 India has, I think, the second-largest film industry
25 in the world. First? Okay. And yet, outside

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 of India the market for those films is probably
2 fairly limited. Do you know whether most Indian
3 films are coded so that -- on DVDs, so that they can
4 be viewed worldwide? Or are they simply regionally
5 coded?

6 MR. MARKS: Do you know what? I don't
7 know, but I will try and find out. I don't even
8 know if Indian producers are making their films
9 available on DVD, but I will try to find that out.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay.

11 MS. GROSS: I just wanted to clarify
12 what I was saying. The Notice of Inquiry was
13 requesting whether or not there was harm to people,
14 and it didn't ask whether or not there was harm to
15 U.S. people.

16 MR. CARSON: Okay. But let's keep in
17 mind that ultimately what we're trying to do here is
18 figure out whether we should recommend an exemption,
19 and that exemption -- I don't think -- can directly
20 affect what happens outside the United States.

21 All right. So, the harm I've heard from
22 yourself -- and I want to make sure I've got your
23 catalogue of problems here with DVDs. We've got the
24 problem for people with Linux operating systems,
25 which some people would say is being resolved or may

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 soon be resolved, depending on how available this
2 driver is, I guess. You've certainly got your
3 doubts about that.

4 You've got the problem of regional
5 coding. What are the other specific problems we've
6 got that we need to be worried about with respect to
7 DVDs?

8 MS. GROSS: The fact that fair use is
9 completely prevented. As we've heard here today,
10 people are required to get a license in order to
11 make a fair use of a DVD. This idea that, well, you
12 can simply go out and buy a VHS, it doesn't work.
13 And it doesn't work because DVDs are a completely
14 different experience than a VHS.

15 They have director's cuts, you can look
16 at different shot angle, different camera angles.
17 There's all sorts of additional information that is
18 included in the DVD that you simply cannot get on a
19 VHS. There is no equivalent to a DVD, so fair use
20 is severely impacted. It's completely prohibited.

21 MR. CARSON: What other fair uses of a
22 DVD can't engage in under the current regime?

23 MS. GROSS: If I want to make a back-up
24 copy for my own personal use.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: Okay. Let's stop with
2 that. What case law tells you that you have a fair
3 use right to make a back-up copy of the DVD for your
4 own personal use?

5 MS. GROSS: I think that Sony v.
6 Universal Cities says that.

7 MR. CARSON: Really? That's an
8 interesting proposition.

9 MR. MARKS: I don't think Sony says
10 that.

11 MS. GROSS: Software law specifically
12 allows you to do that, and DVDs certainly fall under
13 software.

14 MR. CARSON: DVDs fall within Section
15 117, is that what you're saying?

16 MS. GROSS: DVDs are software.

17 MR. CARSON: Okay. Are you saying that
18 they're covered by Section 117?

19 MS. GROSS: I'm not really sure what 117
20 is.

21 MR. CARSON: Okay. You might want to
22 take a look at it, and let us know in your post-
23 hearing comments.

24 MS. GROSS: But I think that the 9th
25 Circuit decision in the Diamond RIAA case, that

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 people have a fair use right to copy an entire song
2 onto their computer hard drives for personal use --
3 I think you'll find a lot of that in the case law.

4 MR. CARSON: You might want to cite a
5 few cases to us, then, too.

6 MS. GROSS: I will do that.

7 MR. CARSON: I'm not terribly familiar
8 with a whole lot of case law that says you can do
9 that. Let's go on. What are the fair uses are that
10 you're saying can't be done right now?

11 MS. GROSS: Well, in one of the
12 affidavits submitted in the DCSS case was Professor
13 Charlie Nessen (phonetic) from Harvard Law School,
14 who talked about how he typically would like to use
15 a portion of a DVD from the movie, "The Client," I
16 think it was, as part of educating the law students
17 on how to handle certain situations.

18 And he's now prohibited from taking that
19 snippet of the DVD and showing it to his students.
20 That's an educational use that is prohibited.

21 MR. CARSON: Okay. He could do that
22 with a VHS version, correct?

23 MS. GROSS: Well, he might be able to.
24 But there's no guarantee that he could.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: Why is there no guarantee
2 that he could? What on earth could stop him?

3 MS. GROSS: Because there's no guarantee
4 that the film will be released in VHS. There's no
5 guarantee that the DVD is the same equivalent
6 content.

7 MR. CARSON: Okay. That particular film
8 is in VHS right now.

9 MS. GROSS: Okay, that film may be.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay. We're talking about
11 now and the next three years. Are you seriously
12 telling me that there are films that are going to be
13 released in DVD in the next three years that will
14 not be available in VHS?

15 MS. GROSS: I think that's right.

16 MR. CARSON: Why do you think that's
17 right?

18 MS. GROSS: Because they're completely
19 separate products, a DVD and a VHS.

20 MR. CARSON: Well, if they're the same
21 film -- although the DVD may have added value.

22 MS. GROSS: I think they're very
23 different. When you incorporate all the additional
24 information and the incredibly rich multimedia

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 experience that a DVD provides, it's not at all the
2 same.

3 MR. CARSON: Okay. Professor Nessen
4 wants to show a film clip from the motion picture.
5 He's going to be able to do that with a VHS version.
6 There's no question, is there?

7 MR. MARKS: He'll be able to do that
8 with the DVD version. I mean, if he has a DVD
9 player in his classroom, Section 110 covers that use
10 of display in the classroom. There's no prohibition
11 on that.

12 MR. CARSON: I'm just baffled. I don't
13 know how he can't do what you're saying he can't do,
14 with what's available to him now. And I think Mr.
15 Marks is correct. He can take a DVD player into the
16 classroom, and a tv, and he can show that clip.

17 MS. GROSS: As long as that movie is
18 available in that format, that's true.

19 MR. CARSON: Well, if it's not available
20 in that format, he's in trouble anyway. Because
21 we're talking about a DVD right now, and a DVD
22 player. I'm sorry, I'm just trying to understand
23 the fair uses that people can't engage in using the
24 currently authorized equipment. And so far I
25 haven't heard any.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. GROSS: Simply playing their DVD on
2 their computer --

3 MR. CARSON: Okay, we've talked about
4 that. Let's talk about fair use, though. What are
5 the fair uses that are prevented under the current
6 regime?

7 MS. GROSS: If I wanted to make a small
8 copy, or a small excerpt of a certain part for a
9 certain reason that's only available in DVD, I'm
10 prohibited.

11 MR. CARSON: Is that correct, Mr. Marks?

12 MR. MARKS: Are you talking about
13 legally prohibited?

14 MS. GROSS: I'm talking about --

15 MR. MARKS: Or having technically --
16 making it technically difficult to do so?

17 MS. GROSS: I'm talking about
18 technically prohibited.

19 MR. MARKS: Again, my answer would be
20 that, yes, when it comes out the analog output it
21 will be protected by Macrovision. And yes, the
22 content will not go out a digital output at the
23 beginning. So it makes it more technically
24 difficult to make a copy of a small clip from a DVD.
25 Is it impossible? No. And that's the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 camcording example that I used. When the DVD is
2 playing, you can copy a snippet of it on a
3 camcorder. It may not be convenient, it may not be
4 the best copy quality that you would like, but I
5 don't believe the fair use doctrine says that a user
6 gets to reproduce copies of the best format and in
7 the best quality.

8 Nobody has ever argued, for example,
9 that film studios have to make their 35-millimeter
10 theatrical prints available to users who want to
11 take out clips or snippets for the purpose of fair
12 use.

13 MR. CARSON: So you're basically saying
14 analog is good enough for fair use?

15 MR. MARKS: Yes, I am.

16 MR. HANGARTNER: But doesn't the law
17 already actually cover that, in that you've kind of
18 separated the idea of access versus fair use. That
19 if this person wants to copy it, that they have to
20 circumvent Macrovision in order to make the snippet.
21 I thought that that was covered under fair use in
22 some of the comments -- actually, Marybeth Peters
23 early on before Congress that access versus
24 infringement, or am I just totally out of my mind?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. CARSON: We're not psychiatrists, we
2 couldn't answer that.

3 MS. PETERS: Thank you.

4 MR. HANGARTNER: In actually being able
5 to copy the works, I thought we were talking more
6 here about access than really talking about copying
7 the works. If this professor wants to copy the work
8 with a Macrovision output that comes out, and they
9 circumvent the technological measure for that
10 purpose, that's very separate from what we're
11 talking about here in Section 1201(a) for access in
12 particular.

13 MR. CARSON: Well, the point's a fair
14 one. That if the access control is preventing you
15 from having the means to make a copy which might be
16 fair use, then maybe you have a problem. I think
17 that's Ms. Gross's point.

18 MR. HANGARTNER: That already exists, I
19 guess, with Macrovision and with the copying that's
20 there. Not to argue the other side of things. I'm
21 just trying to understand it as well.

22 MS. GROSS: Since all copying is
23 prohibited by the DVDs, fair use by definition is
24 prohibited.

25 MR. CARSON: All right.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. MARKS: See, I think that's a
2 mistake in conception of fair use. To equate fair
3 use with copying is almost like equating fair use
4 with consumption. I mean, fair use can involve not
5 literally copying a work, but copying some of the
6 expression of a work for parody. Copying some of
7 the expression of a work for criticism and comment.
8 It's not just about physically copying the format
9 that the work happens to be in.

10 MR. CARSON: Well, I'm trying to think.
11 Aside from the time-shifting situation in Sony, have
12 there been cases holding that the actual copying of
13 a motion picture is fair use?

14 MS. GROSS: The Diamond multimedia
15 decision, RIAA v. Diamond. That's not motion
16 pictures, but MP3.

17 MS. PETERS: And there's an Audio Home
18 Recording Act.

19 MR. MARKS: That's correct.

20 MS. PETERS: That has the serial copy
21 management piece in it, that says there's no
22 infringement when you make the copy.

23 MR. CARSON: So I think we're going
24 into, at best, maybe a murky area as to whether fair
25 use is even available in that context. I'd be

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 interested in hearing or seeing some authority from
2 you about actual replication of portions of motion
3 pictures as being fair use. Because I'm not sure
4 the case law is out there, but I may have overlooked
5 it.

6 MS. GROSS: Well, I think that the Sony
7 v. Universal Cities case was about people's ability
8 to make a complete copy of a complete movie.

9 MR. CARSON: In the context of time-
10 shifting, you're absolutely right.

11 MR. MARKS: Time-shifting of free over-
12 the-air television. Sony v. Betamax does not stand
13 for the proposition that you can make a complete
14 copy of a work from pay-per-view television, from a
15 videocassette, from DVD. It simply does not stand
16 for the proposition that copying audiovisual works
17 by individuals is fair use. Fair use always balances
18 the rights of the copyright owner and the use
19 interests that are being asserted by the putative
20 fair use user. It's not an absolute.

21 MR. CARSON: All right. Mr. Hangartner
22 and Mr. Herpolsheimer, feel free to jump in. Well,
23 first of all, you mentioned a decision just handed
24 down here in the Northern District of California.
25 We're not aware of that decision, but we'd certainly

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 like to know more about it. If you have a copy of
2 it, we'd like to see it.

3 MR. HANGARTNER: Oh, there actually is
4 not a written decision yet. It was an oral ruling
5 from the bench last Tuesday in the case, Sony
6 Computer Entertainment America v. Connectix
7 Corporation.

8 MR. CARSON: Oh, this is on remand?

9 MR. HANGARTNER: No. Actually, this was
10 on summary judgment. Connectix moved for a summary
11 judgment on the DMCA claim brought by Sony, which
12 claimed that it was a circumvention device.

13 MR. CARSON: I'm sorry, go ahead.

14 MR. HANGARTNER: And the court granted
15 summary judgment for Connectix. The transcript
16 should be available next week, and we could provide
17 a copy if you'd like that.

18 MR. CARSON: Yes, that would be great.
19 And I gather you expect a written decision to be
20 forthcoming?

21 MR. HANGARTNER: It's not clear. The
22 court was not clear if it would be doing a written
23 decision in the near future, or if it would be
24 holding off on a written decision until sometime in
25 the future. But I think the transcript may -- well,

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 it will contain the court's comments regarding a
2 written decision.

3 MR. CARSON: Okay. One thing I wasn't
4 able to get out of your testimony is what classes,
5 if any, you are advocating that we recommend the
6 Librarian exempt from Section 1201(a). Do you have
7 a suggestion for us?

8 MR. HANGARTNER: Well, the thing of that
9 I threw out, right off the top of my head, was -- I
10 mean, I'm not sure of his name, but the fellow over
11 here in the green tie who was talking earlier. He
12 mentioned that one way to look at this is to start
13 from the very specific and move to the more general.

14 And so I was sort of throwing out to
15 start from the very specific. In our instance, the
16 particular class of works that Bleem is most
17 concerned about at this point is PlayStation video
18 games, which are produced on CD-ROM.

19 Now, I know David's been thinking a bit
20 about other classes of works, and maybe I'll turn it
21 over to him. This is one of these things that I'm
22 sure we'll have an awful lot to say about in our
23 post-hearing comments. But how you move from that
24 very specific example, which as I described earlier,
25 you've got a class of works which are distributed

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 without license, that are actually sold so that the
2 person acquires a copy of it. And they're sent out
3 on a CD format that is accessible. So it's a very
4 specific type of disk that forms that very
5 particular class of works.

6 Now, whether there is that class of
7 works shall be defined more generically than
8 PlayStation video disks is an issue that, I think,
9 requires some thought. How you can create a class
10 of works that strikes the right balance here. I
11 don't know, David, do you have thoughts on that?

12 MR. HERPOLSHEIMER: My concern is more
13 with the way that we've seen 1201 used specifically
14 against us, and against the Japanese variant of that
15 law used against some of our retailers in Japan. Is
16 that it seems to be being used to expand the scope
17 of copyright beyond where it already affords
18 protection for copying for infringement for a lot of
19 areas.

20 That they're taking this sort of
21 technological measure and applying almost a self-
22 help program that some content providers can use to
23 really lock down their content. And limit the
24 ability of end-users to actually not just have fair
25 uses, but have uses at all to the content that they

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 have gone out and lawfully purchased copies of
2 copyrighted works.

3 And that the imposition of -- like I
4 said, expanding 117 to go beyond -- or not 117. It
5 should be 1201 to go beyond what I've seen in some
6 of the early history, and some of the statements,
7 again from Ms. Peters, really talking about it being
8 something to expand the growth of digital networks.
9 And to allow copyrighted works to be disseminated
10 more freely over digital networks by protecting the
11 rights of copyright holders. And we're all in favor
12 of that, because we produce content just like
13 everybody else here. We want to have our works
14 protected.

15 But to then take that protection that's
16 really going more towards specific kinds of uses.
17 When you're talking about digital networks, it's
18 almost like protecting -- in the example that he had
19 of walking in and videotaping a movie in a movie
20 theater.

21 What we're really talking about here is
22 specific accesses of watching a one-time pay-per-
23 view movie, or you know, playing a copyrighted video
24 game over a network where you need to protect that

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 content to make sure it doesn't just get kind of
2 sucked off and reproduced.

3 I think it's a different issue, when you
4 start taking that protection to access, where the
5 encryption is really essential to protecting the
6 work over that network. And then trying to apply it
7 to areas where there are already substantial and
8 very effective protections against infringement.

9 You know, to start wrapping access
10 around that starts, I think, hobbling the ability of
11 users to actually use their works. And gives an
12 unfair amount of control, I think, to the copyright
13 holder that's beyond the rights that they should
14 have under the copyright law. The rights that this
15 Act is supposed to support.

16 MR. CARSON: Mr. Russell, if I don't
17 happen to have the Sony PlayStation equipment, but
18 I've got a Sony PlayStation game, why on earth
19 shouldn't I be allowed to use the Bleem emulators
20 where I can play that game on my computer, or on the
21 Sega equipment or something else?

22 MR. RUSSELL: Well, quite frankly, and I
23 don't want to try our case here. It's not limited
24 to the DMCA claim. We have concerns about other IP
25 rights that we have in these games and in the

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 system, and to the way we build these games, that we
2 have alleged that both Bleem and Connectix have
3 violated.

4 So I think the case goes well beyond
5 what is on issue here, which is 1201(a)(1)(A), and
6 that is not -- we did not bring any action, of
7 course, against Bleem or Connectix in those. And
8 the ruling in the court is not under that section.

9 MR. CARSON: All right. Okay. But what
10 I'm trying to get at -- let me put it another way.
11 If I did use the Bleem emulator, say, after October
12 28th of this year, so that I could play one of the
13 PlayStation games on my PC, would it be your
14 position that I would be violating Section 1201?

15 MR. RUSSELL: I think that the issue is
16 an interoperability issue. And I think that is
17 dealt with in the DMCA under, I believe, it's --

18 MS. PETERS: F.

19 MR. RUSSELL: F. And I think F amends
20 or is an exemption from Section 1201(a). So you
21 know, I think that what we're dealing with here, if
22 that's what we're concerned with, there is a
23 provision that deals with this. And then the
24 question is whether it's lawful reverse engineering
25 to achieve interoperability.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 And I'm not going to go through that.
2 That's not the area of discussion here, and I think
3 that's something that is very, very fact-specific.
4 And certainly should not be made -- determined on
5 the -- they come up on an individual basis, and
6 shouldn't be determined on a broad exemption by a
7 video game class.

8 MR. CARSON: This is late in the day, so
9 maybe I'm not making myself clear. But what I'm
10 trying to understand is if I were to use a Bleem
11 emulator, would I, in engaging in that conduct, be
12 circumventing some technological measures that Sony
13 has that were designed to restrict my access to the
14 PlayStation games? And if so, would I be violating
15 Section 1201(a)?

16 MR. RUSSELL: Again, I believe that it
17 will fall under the exemption that falls under
18 Section 1201(f). Because I believe what's happening
19 here is, no, you may not be violating the -- you may
20 not be circumventing it, you will be having reverse
21 engineered it.

22 MR. CARSON: No, I wouldn't be. I'm
23 using the --

24 MR. RUSSELL: You're the end-user?

25 MR. CARSON: I'm the end-user.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. RUSSELL: No, I don't believe the
2 end-user is **if the emulator is legal**.

3 MR. CARSON: And you don't think the
4 end-user is circumventing technological protections,
5 either?

6 MR. RUSSELL: The technological
7 protection is in the disk and in the machine. So I
8 don't believe that the end-user is **if the emulator**
9 **is legal**.

10 MR. CARSON: Okay, okay. That's really
11 what I was getting at. Thanks.

12 MR. HERPOLSHEIMER: Okay. Well, just on
13 that level, one thing that's interesting is that's
14 exactly what they alleged against us in court. Is
15 that if the end-user isn't doing it by using our
16 product, and our product certainly couldn't be doing
17 it -- and the thing that I'm really afraid of here
18 in the United States is what's happening to us right
19 now in Japan.

20 They have a very similar implementation
21 as we do in 1201. Their law there, I think, is the
22 Unfair Competition Act. But it's very similar in
23 that it protects against unauthorized circumvention
24 of technological measures that effectively control -
25 - blah, blah, blah.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 But they have some very specific
2 language that say that the playing of pirated video
3 games -- this is one of the concerns that, in our
4 particular circumstance, comes up, is that because
5 this whiz code is proprietary to Sony, and in fact
6 patented, if we were to recognize it we would be in
7 violation of their patent.

8 That because of the whiz code -- that
9 because we don't recognize the whiz code we are
10 violating or we are circumventing their protections.
11 In Japan, they say the that the act of playing a
12 pirated game isn't actually an infringement. It's
13 making the copied game is an infringement there.

14 They specifically preclude video games,
15 they specifically speak towards issues like whether
16 or not the protection on the disk is actually
17 voluntary. In the case of video games it's one
18 where every manufacturer of PlayStation games is
19 required to appoint Sony as part of their license
20 for the development tools. They're required to make
21 them their sole manufacturers of CDs, and that
22 protection is included in the CDs. So is it truly
23 voluntary?

24 In spite of all this, Sony is still
25 going out and going to our retailers there and

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 basically threatening them with lawsuits unless they
2 cease to carry our product and pay back -- I don't
3 know, \$200 per copy, I think, for every copy they've
4 sold. And write a letter apologizing to Sony for
5 ever carrying it in the first place.

6 And these are the kinds of things that,
7 if there's any vagueness or if there isn't a clear
8 exemption for certain kinds of uses in the law that
9 we can point to, and that we can make clear and
10 understandable -- this is in the face of MIDI
11 (phonetic) in Japan. Actually telling the people,
12 "No, we don't see that there's anything wrong with
13 it, but who knows what the judge will say?"

14 But I'm just afraid that we're going to
15 have the same kind of issues in this country. Where
16 they can go and they can say, "Look, Bleem is a
17 product that violates the DMCA. You, by selling it
18 as a store, are in violation of the DMCA," with the
19 further enactments going down to end-users. And
20 putting out ads and saying, "Anybody who uses Bleem
21 is in violation of the DMCA, and we're going go
22 after them."

23 Contrary to what he said here today,
24 that's not what they have expressed in court and in
25 numerous threatening letters to our retailers.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. RUSSELL: Quite frankly, I don't
2 feel this is an appropriate forum to try our case.

3 MR. CARSON: I'm not trying to try
4 anyone's case. I'm just trying to figure out
5 whether there's an issue here within our domain,
6 which is why I'm asking --

7 MR. RUSSELL: No, I understand that.

8 MR. HANGARTNER: I'd just point out,
9 too, that it's not really a matter of trying the
10 case. But the fact is that Sony and many of the
11 other folks who have spoken here today are putting
12 the burden on the proponents of a specific exemption
13 to establish that there is an impact. And I think
14 that this discussion is relevant to that.

15 This is an actual impact that, despite
16 the fact that 1201(a)(1)(A) is not yet in effect, we
17 can point to -- provide tangible evidence that this
18 is a -- there's a real risk of this. And that's the
19 only reason this is coming out. It's not an issue
20 of trying cases here, or anything else. But it's
21 relevant experience that I think bears on this
22 discussion.

23 MR. GOLDBERG: May I point out that it
24 is not the copyright owners who have placed the
25 burden, it's Congress.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. PETERS: That is right. And we
2 still do have one more comment period for people who
3 want the opportunity to add additional material.

4 MR. CARSON: In response to positions
5 taken at these hearings.

6 MS. PETERS: It is now quarter of six.
7 So instead of going in order, I'm just going to
8 basically ask if there's anyone here who wants to
9 ask questions. I'm going to look around. Okay,
10 Rachel, we'll start with you.

11 MS. GOSLINS: I know it's late and it's
12 hot. So I'll try and keep it really, really brief.
13 Ms. Gross, I was just wondering how you would
14 respond to Mr. Marks' argument that, without these
15 technological protections in existence, without the
16 existence of them, his company or other companies
17 wouldn't have put out these products at all.

18 So, you know, in a sense they're out
19 there and they're doing some consumers some good.
20 Why should the fact that they decided to put them
21 out in a protected format mean that you -- that
22 anybody has a right to circumvent that, in lieu of -
23 - if we accept his argument that in lieu of these
24 protections, they wouldn't even be on the market.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MS. GROSS: Well, I wouldn't say anybody
2 has a right. But I think that it's really kind of
3 false to say that people will not create, that
4 society will not create absent of technological
5 protection measures. People have always created,
6 and they will continue to create.

7 And I think we can look right now to the
8 music business, and what's going on in the Internet
9 with music and MP3s. And companies like MP3.com and
10 eMusic, and all sorts of new business models that
11 are coming up and proliferating, and all sorts of
12 new artists who are putting their music out there.

13 Society has never had more choice in
14 accessing music legitimately. So I think it's
15 really sort of false to say that society will
16 discontinue creation of intellectual property absent
17 this level of protection.

18 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Dean, just two
19 really quick questions. Do you currently stagger
20 video? Does your company, or do you know if other
21 companies currently stagger video releases between
22 the -- whatever the initials are of the U.S. format
23 and the PAL format?

24 MR. MARKS: Yes, there is staggering.
25 Really, it depends upon the distribution channels of

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 the media -- windows of exploitation. In general,
2 movies are released first in the United States
3 before they are released overseas. And in general -
4 - this is subject to some exceptions -- video
5 release occurs six months after theatre release in
6 the United States.

7 So, to the extent that the theatrical
8 release in Europe is later than the theatrical
9 release in the U.S., the video release in Europe is
10 later than in the U.S. And in some countries -- and
11 I'm not sure it's still the case today, but it
12 certainly up to recently was the case in France,
13 there was a law that said you could not release on
14 video prior to six months after theatrical release.
15 So we're constrained by some of those laws as well.

16 If I may, I just wanted one quick
17 response to Ms. Gross' reply to your answer -- your
18 question, rather. It's late in the day for all of
19 us.

20 I wasn't asserting that absent
21 technological protection measure people would stop
22 creating. I was saying that, absent the ability to
23 use technological protection measure, creators and
24 publishers and distributors may not make their works
25 available on certain formats like DVD. I was not

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 saying that there would no longer be creative
2 activity.

3 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. And one more quick
4 question. And I know -- I certainly don't want to
5 get into a long discussion about it at this hour.
6 But I'm curious, the question I posed to Steve this
7 morning about what happens if we do decide that we
8 exempt a class of works, what does that mean under C
9 & D. I'm just curious to hear your answer to that,
10 since we're taking a poll.

11 MR. MARKS: I was hopeful that Steve's
12 scholarly and forthright answer would settle it for
13 everyone. But I basically agree with what Steve
14 said. And it's -- on the one hand I'm sort of
15 sympathetic to the argument that the reference to
16 users in 1201(d) is users who are making only non-
17 infringing uses.

18 But the problem that I have with that is
19 fair use is -- as we all know and as the Supreme
20 Court has said -- a balancing test that operates on
21 a case by case basis that's very factually
22 intensive, and like in Acuff-Rose you have courts
23 that, at every level of the way, reversed one
24 another.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 So it's hard for me to imagine creating
2 bright line rules concerning classes of works for
3 non-infringing uses, and determining ab initio what
4 those non-infringing uses are. Is it impossible for
5 all non-infringing uses? No. I would say private
6 viewing of videos, for example, in one's own home is
7 a non-infringing use. Clear. Clear enough.

8 But there are all sorts of copying for
9 where it's really hard to come up with those bright
10 line rules ab initio. And so that leads me to think
11 that maybe Steve is correct, that when 1201(D) was
12 referring to users, it was referring to users in
13 general, and not just users who are making non-
14 infringing uses.

15 The second point being, if one read the
16 provision to limit it to users who are making non-
17 infringing uses, how do you really monitor and sort
18 of enforce that? It would be rather difficult.

19 That being said, I was very sensitive to
20 Mr. Carson's argument that we don't want to
21 necessarily turn 1201(b) into the bluntest
22 instrument possible. So I think it's a very
23 complicated question.

24 MS. GOSLINS: Okay. Mort, do you have a
25 response to that?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 MR. GOLDBERG: ~~I'm not sure I agree that~~
2 ~~the users are to be defined in that way. But I'll~~
3 ~~have to take another look at it. The users~~
4 ~~potentially immunized under 1201(a)(1)(D) would be~~
5 ~~all users of the designated "class of works."~~

6 MS. GOSLINS: Four questions, and then
7 that's it.

8 MR. KASUNIC: I have one question. This
9 is in regards to CSS. I know we've talked a lot
10 about it. But CSS protects both access and the
11 Section 106 rights of the copyright owners, as you
12 said before.

13 MR. MARKS: Right.

14 MR. KASUNIC: 1201(a)(1) protects only
15 technical protection measures that protect access.

16 MR. MARKS: Right.

17 MR. KASUNIC: And Congress specifically
18 chose not to have a prohibition for the conduct
19 circumvention of measures that protect the Section
20 106 rights. So if we have a technological
21 protection measure that does not discriminate
22 between access and copy protection measures, the
23 latter of which was not specifically chosen by
24 Congress to be prohibited, who should bear that
25 burden of this indiscriminate use of technology?

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Since Congress did choose that the
2 latter will not be protected, shouldn't this burden
3 be placed on the copyright owner to show that
4 there's a need for this, or why the indiscriminate
5 use is necessary?

6 MR. MARKS: Let me answer that in a
7 couple of pieces. One, that I don't think it's
8 indiscriminate use. I was trying to describe
9 through the history of the development of the CSS
10 copy protection structure why the content industry
11 was really -- I don't want to say forced, but really
12 led to develop a structure where encryption was the
13 hook.

14 It was because of the reactions we were
15 getting from the computer industry, and the fact
16 that we knew these works were going to be played on
17 computer platforms. And by the limits in the law
18 that say if you employ a mere copy control
19 technology, like an SCMS flag in audio, absent a
20 particular legislative provision like the Audio Home
21 Recording Act that mandates consumer electronic
22 players to look for and respond to SCMS, the DMCA
23 says there's no obligation to respond.

24 So the notion of trying to implement
25 copy protection technology in a way that devices

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 will respond, required us to go to a system where
2 encryption was the initial hook. So it's not really
3 an indiscriminate use, it's a way -- it was really,
4 frankly, our only way of trying to implement
5 effective copy protection technology.

6 But I'm not quite done yet, though.
7 Thankfully, in the area of CSS -- and this goes to
8 the gentleman, David, David's remark. In this
9 particular instance, the content flows out the
10 analog output with Macrovision. Macrovision is the
11 copy control technology that inhibits copying of the
12 analog signal. A condition of the CSS license is
13 that devices, whether they be the computers or the
14 DVD players, apply Macrovision to the signal as it
15 goes out the analog output.

16 If a user circumvents Macrovision on the
17 content of the DVD as it flows out the analog
18 output, in order to make a copy, the law does not
19 prohibit the individual conduct involved in this
20 type of circumvention .

21 So, therefore, if the individual user --
22 and I think this is what you were getting at -- were
23 to circumvent Macrovision, it doesn't fall within
24 the 1201(a)(1)(A) prohibition. It would be a

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 circumvention of a copy control technology that is
2 permitted under the law.

3 MR. METALITZ: Rob, could I add just a
4 sentence or two to that answer?

5 MR. MARKS: But I want to clarify, if
6 there are any lingering questions on that. Because
7 I think it's a very important point.

8 MR. METALITZ: I was just going to say
9 your question used the word "burden," and we may be
10 confusing two burdens here. In any particular case
11 if someone were alleging a violation of
12 1201(a)(1)(A) the Plaintiff would have to prove that
13 what was circumvented was an access control. And if
14 that's the issue, and it was put into issue, the
15 burden of proof on that would rest with the
16 Plaintiff to show that.

17 Here, of course, we're only talking
18 about the burden in this proceeding. Things are a
19 little bit different. Congress has already decided
20 that these circumventions should be outlawed, and
21 the question of exception is that the burden is on
22 the proponent of the exceptions. But I just wanted
23 to clarify that.

24 MR. KASUNIC: But the burden is on the
25 proponent of the exemptions for the access controls.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 Here we have some testimony that there are adverse
2 effects from CSS -- whether they're cured or not is
3 another question. So there was some showing that
4 there were adverse effects to certain users of this,
5 in terms of the access.

6 The hypothetical we had in Congress of
7 going into the bookstore to buy the book doesn't
8 seem appropriate here, in terms of access. Here we
9 had legitimate users going into that bookstore and
10 buying the book, the DVD, only to find that then it
11 too was locked. In addition, different uses of that
12 DVD were restricted after that lawful access was --

13 MR. METALITZ: The way you pose that
14 question -- and it really has come up in a lot of
15 the comments here. You know, it almost sounds like
16 you're raising a consumer protection issue. That
17 somehow the consumer is surprised to find that when
18 she buys a DVD in Europe that she can't play it on a
19 U.S. machine, or that if you -- to use the late
20 lamented DIVX technology -- it's probably unlamented
21 by many in this room. But that was a technology
22 that was a time-limited DVD, in effect. And you
23 could only play it three times or over a certain
24 period of time.

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 I think we have to distinguish between
2 whether someone maybe wasn't aware when they bought
3 it, and therefore didn't know what the limitations
4 were, versus the question of whether it's legitimate
5 to have the limitations at all. Or whether there's
6 some problem, from the perspective of this
7 proceeding, with using access control mechanisms to
8 enforce those limitations.

9 Now, when people subscribe to HBO, they
10 generally do know. They're put on notice that it's
11 a time-limited subscription. They can't go back
12 later and put in a black box to see again what their
13 subscription has expired to.

14 But, the consumer protection side of
15 that is a separate question from whether, A, the
16 copyright owner can use those access control
17 mechanisms, and B, whether it's illegal to
18 circumvent those. And, as Dean has pointed out, for
19 some 20 years it's been illegal to circumvent those
20 protections. So this, again, is not really a new
21 concept.

22 MR. MARKS: Steve, I just want to
23 supplement the HBO example, because there had been a
24 comment that the HBO example was irrelevant because
25 if you were descrambling because you hadn't paid for

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 your HBO subscription, that was a different case
2 from having bought a DVD, paid for it and not be
3 able to play it.

4 That was not the example that I used in
5 my testimony. The example I used was you had
6 purchased a subscription to HBO, and during the time
7 that you are a legitimate purchaser of HBO's
8 service, you own a television set -- granted there
9 aren't many around today, probably, except maybe in
10 antique stores -- a tv set that was not cable-ready,
11 that could not accommodate a set-top box.

12 The HBO signal would be coming to your
13 home in encrypted form. If you had a television set
14 that could not accommodate the set-top box with a
15 descrambler for the HBO system, under the
16 Communications Act you do not have a right to buy a
17 black box and decrypt the HBO signal in order to get
18 the content. Even if you're a subscriber and have
19 paid for HBO. And that's the point I wanted to try
20 and make.

21 MR. GOLDBERG: May I comment on the
22 implication of the question there? I think the
23 question implicates the matter of burden very
24 clearly. And we are to focus on distinct,
25 verifiable and measurable impacts. Isolated or de

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 minimis effects, speculation, conjecture, et cetera,
2 do not amount to meeting of burden. And I think
3 that those effects that are isolated, de minimis,
4 speculation, et cetera, should be regarded as such.
5 And not as meeting a burden.

6 MR. KASUNIC: I just want to offer Ms.
7 Gross or anyone else an opportunity.

8 MS. PETERS: I just want to ask one
9 question on behalf of libraries. Libraries purchase
10 DVDs. And DVDs, do they deteriorate or do they stay
11 good forever? You're a library that's an archive.

12 MR. MARKS: Right. My understanding --
13 and again, this is going to be an additional
14 question for me to research for you -- is that the
15 life of a DVD disk is greater than the life of a VHS
16 tape, an analog videocassette. That that will
17 deteriorate more quickly than a DVD disk will. But
18 it is not my understanding that a DVD disk will not
19 ever degrade over time.

20 MS. PETERS: Are you aware of libraries
21 purchasing and then seeking in the purchase, the
22 ability to somehow make a back-up copy that isn't in
23 exactly the same format, but in a neutral format
24 that they can basically have as machines become not

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 available? Or do you know what libraries are doing
2 with regard to that?

3 MR. MARKS: I don't know. And I haven't
4 heard of any such request being made.

5 MS. PETERS: Well, they clearly have a
6 right under Section 108, to the point where it's
7 deteriorating, to make back-up copies. And the
8 question is if you had an access control on it,
9 wouldn't that then inhibit the ability that they
10 have by law with regard to the copy?

11 MR. MARKS: It may, it may. And I think
12 if that sort of problem develops, I think a much
13 more sensible remedy to that problem is for the
14 library and the content owner to work out some sort
15 of guideline, whereby the content owner needs to
16 make available a copy that's suitable for archiving
17 to the library. I think an approach that is
18 specifically tailored to this potential problem
19 would be far better than enacting or adopting an
20 exception to the prohibition on circumvention.

21 I understand that 1201(a)(1)(B) really
22 only gives you rulemaking authority in this context,
23 to adopt exceptions or exemptions for circumvention.
24 But I know the Library of Congress has other
25 rulemaking abilities in terms of preservation or

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com

1 archiving or library exceptions. And I think that
2 would be proper place to address those concerns.

3 MS. PETERS: Okay. Well, it's now after
4 six o'clock. I want to thank all the witnesses for
5 -- I'm looking around before I do this. Is there
6 anyone else who wants to ask a question on the
7 panel? Is there anyone else out there who wants to
8 say anything?

9 All right. It's after six, and that I
10 really do appreciate all the effort that went into
11 people to appear here today. And also your
12 willingness to answer our questions so thoroughly.
13 And I also want to thank people who attended.

14 There is one more opportunity to have
15 input into the evidence that we're gathering. And
16 that, of course, is the comments that can come in up
17 to June the 23rd on what was raised in here. Thank
18 you very much.

19 (Whereupon, at 6:05 p.m., the hearing
20 was adjourned.)

21

22

23

NEAL R. GROSS

COURT REPORTERS AND TRANSCRIBERS
1323 RHODE ISLAND AVE., N.W.

(202) 234-4433 WASHINGTON, D.C. 20005-3701 www.nealrgross.com